This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

2 vols
£1 1 10 -

Robert Drummond.

DS
7
.B43
1788
V.1

1817
ARTES
SCIENTIA
VERITAS
RARY OF THE
VERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TUEBOR

NON
CIRCULATING

DS
7
.B43
1788
v.1

# TRAVELS

FROM

# ST. PETERSBURGH

IN

# RUSSIA,

TO

VARIOUS PARTS

OF

# ASIA.

ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

By JOHN BELL,
OF ANTERMONY.

VOLUME FIRST.

EDINBURGH:
PRINTED FOR WILLIAM CREECH,
AND SOLD BY
GEO. ROBINSONS AND CO. LONDON.

MDCCLXXXVIII.

TO THE

GOVERNOUR,

COURT OF ASSISTANTS,

AND FREEMEN,

OF THE

RUSSIA COMPANY,

AND TO THE

BRITISH FACTORIES

IN RUSSIA,

THE FOLLOWING

RELATION OF TRAVELS, &c.

Are reſpectfully inſcribed,

As a teſtimony of gratitude,

For the favours received,

From many of them,

By their moſt obedient,

And very-humble ſervant,

ANTERMONY,
Oct. 1. 1762.

THE AUTHOR.

Librarian
Edwards
4-28-45
5,859

THE

# PREFACE.

IN my youth I had a ſtrong deſire of ſeeing foreign parts; to ſatisfy which inclination, after having obtained, from ſome perſons of worth, recommendatory letters to Dr Areſkine, chief phyſician and privy-counſellor to the Czar Peter the Firſt, I embarked at London, in the month of July 1714, on board the Proſperity of Ramſgate, Captain Emerſon, for St Peterſburgh. On my arrival there, I was received by Dr Areſkine in a very friendly manner; to whom I communicated my intentions

intentions of ſeeking an opportunity of viſiting ſome parts of Aſia, at leaſt thoſe parts which border on Ruſſia. Such an opportunity ſoon preſented itſelf, on occaſion of an embaſſy, then preparing, from his Czariſh Majeſty to the Sophy of Perſia.

Artemy Petrovich Valenſky, a gentleman of a family of diſtinction, and a Captain of the guards, was appointed ambaſſador by his Majeſty. Upon his nomination, he applied to Dr Areſkine to recommend a perſon who had ſome knowledge in phyſic and ſurgery, to go in his ſuite in the embaſſy. As I had employed ſome part of my time in thoſe ſtudies, the Doctor recommended me; which he did in ſo cordial a manner, as produced to me, from the ambaſſador many marks of friendſhip and regard, which ſubſiſted not only during the journey, but alſo continued, from that time, to the end of his days. The Doctor, at the ſame time, recommended me to the college of foreign affairs at St Peterſburgh,

by

by whom I was engaged in the ſervice of Peter the Firſt.

Having acquainted the reader with the manner of my entering on the travels, which are the principal ſubject of the following ſheets, I ſhall take the liberty to ſay, that I have, through the whole, given the obſervations, which then appeared to me worth remarking, without attempting to embelliſh them, by taking any of the liberties of exaggeration, or invention, frequently imputed to travellers.

I took notes of the ſubject of the following treatiſe, by way of diary, from time to time, during the courſe of my travels, intending nothing further, at that time, than to keep them as helps to my memory, that I might, as occaſion offered, communicate, in converſation with my friends, what I had obſerved worth remarking, and that I might be capable of giving information to others, who might be deſirous of it, on their being to make the ſame journies.

About

About four years ago, ſpending ſome days at the houſe of a Right Honourable and moſt honoured friend, the ſubject of my travels took up a great part of our converſation; during which, upon his inquiring occaſionally, whether I had taken any notes of the places, &c. through which I had paſſed in my ſeveral journeys? and, upon my anſwering in the affirmative, he was pleaſed to take ſome pains to engage me to promiſe that I would collect my notes and obſervations, and form them into journals, as complete as the time elapſed would admit, and communicate them to the world.

It was not without reluctance that I ſet about this work, which, had I thought it worth the public's acceptance and peruſal, I would have done long ago. Such as it is, I now offer it to them; and flatter myſelf, (with hopes at leaſt), that the plainneſs of ſtile in which it is written will be of no prejudice to it with candid readers, who may find in it ſome things new, and

of

of which they would chooſe to be informed.

In regard to the tranſlation of Mr De Lange's Journal, I have given it for two reaſons: Firſt, becauſe it continues the negotiation begun by Mr De Iſmayloff, in the courſe of which Mr De Lange furniſhes the reader with a diſtinct detail of the manner of tranſacting affairs with the miniſters of ſtate, of their chicaneries, &c. at the court of Pekin. Secondly, becauſe I do not apprehend it hath ever appeared in the Engliſh language; at leaſt, have made what inquiries I could, to find if it had been tranſlated, which have been all fruitleſs.

As I well knew the worthineſs and integrity of Mr De Lange, and I am fully perſuaded that his Journal was genuine, tho' perhaps obtained ſurreptitiouſly by the editor, I have cloſed the tranſlation with the end of Mr De Lange's Journal, on his arrival at Selinginſky on the frontiers of Siberia; having omitted an addition to it,

made by the editor, of the trade and monies of China; concerning which, the editor, when he enters upon it, acquaints the reader that he had not the means neceſſary for ſufficient information. For the reſt, the tranſlation is juſt, as may be ſeen by comparing it with the original.

Auchtermony,
Oct. 1. 1762.

JOHN BELL.

# CONTENTS.

## VOLUME FIRST.

A Journey from St Peterſburgh in Ruſſia, to Iſpahan in Perſia Page xv

CHAP. I.

*From St Peterſburgh to Cazan* *p.* 1

CHAP. II.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Cazan; our journey thence to Aſtrachan* *p.* 19

CHAP. III.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Aſtrachan; our journey thence to Shamachy* *p.* 40

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Shamachy; our journey thence to Tauris* p. 69

CHAP. V.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Tauris; our journey thence to Iſpahan* p. 87

CHAP. VI.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Iſpahan* p. 113

CHAP. VII.

*From Iſpahan to Shamachy; occurrences during our ſtay there* p. 151

CHAP. VIII.

*From Shamachy to St Peterſburgh* p. 167

A Journey from St Peterſburgh in Ruſſia, to Pekin in China p. 183

CHAP. I.

*From St Peterſburgh to Tobolſky, the Capital of Siberia* p. 185

CHAP. II.

*Occurrences at Tobolſky; obſervations on the Kalmucks, &c. and journey continued to Tomſky* p. 220

CHAP. III.

*Occurrences at Tomſky; obſervations on the Tzulim Tartars, &c. and journey continued to Elimſky* p. 252

CHAP. IV.

*Obſervations on Iakutſky and Kamtzatſky, &c.; journey continued to Irkutſky; and occurrences there* p. 233

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

*From Irkutſky, croſs the Lake Baykall, to Selinginſky; ſome account of the Kutuchtu, &c.* p. 314

## CHAP. VI.

*Occurrences at Selinginſky; ſeveral parties of hunting; and journey continued to Saratzyn, the boundary between the Ruſſian and Chineſe territories* p. 348

## CHAP. VII.

*From paſſing the Saratzyn, and entering the Chineſe territories, to our arrival at the wall of China* p. 380

## CHAP. VIII.

*From the wall of China to Pekin; our entry into that city* p. 416

A

# JOURNEY

FROM

# ST. PETERSBURGH

IN RUSSIA,

TO

# ISPAHAN

IN PERSIA.

WITH AN EMBASSY

FROM HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY,

PETER THE FIRST,

TO THE

SOPHY OF PERSIA,

SHACH HUSSEIN,

IN THE YEAR MDCCXV.

*Names of the principal perſons who compoſed the train of the Ambaſſador*

Artemii Petrovich Valenſky, viz.

Secretary,

Gregory Chriſtopher Venigerkind.

Captain Engineer,

Jaques de Villette.

Gentlemen of the Embaſſy,

Matphe Parfilich Kartzoff,

Adrian Ivanovich Lopuchin,

The Author of this Journal.

Prieſt,

Hylarion, a Monk.

Interpreters,

Vaſſile Kurdeffsky,

Alexie Tulkatzoff,

Demetry Petritz.

Clerks or Writers,

Vaſſile Shadayoff,

Alexie Buchtaryoff.

With many others, viz. a band of muſic, conſiſting of trumpets, kettle-drums, violins, hautboys, &c. carpenters, ſmiths, taylors, valets, and footmen; amounting in all to above one hundred perſons; beſides a troop of twenty-five dragoons for our eſcort, from Iſtrachan to Iſpahan.

UNIV. OF MICH.

50
55
60
Arras
Astara
Aggar
Keshker
Ardeville
Reshd
Mianna
Zengan
Sultany
Casbin
Saba
Koom
Kassim Abbat
Kashan
Ruck
ISPAHAN
Ruins of Persepolis
Bassora
Bender
CHINA
R A K
PHARSISTA
50

A

# JOURNEY

FROM

# ST PETERSBURGH

TO

# ISPAHAN.

## CHAP. I.

### *From St Peterſburgh to Caſan.*

ON the fifteenth of July 1715, I ſet out from St Peterſburgh, in company with Meſſieurs Venigerkind, De Villette, and Kurdeffsky. That city, which has ſince grown ſo conſiderable, was then in its infancy, having been founded, ten or eleven years before, by that truly great

man Peter the firſt, to whom no under-taking ſeemed difficult.

St Peterſburgh is ſituated in ſixty degrees north latitude, partly on the continent of Ingria and Carelia, and partly on different iſlands formed by the river Neva, which diſcharges itſelf, by four channels, into the Gulf of Finland, a little below the city. It is defended by a ſtrong caſtle, built with ſtone and brick, inacceſſible to ſhips of force, there being but eight feet water on the bar. As the Czar had determined to form a city all at once, and not to truſt to time for the growth of a place which he had choſen for the ſeat of government, he aſſembled inhabitants from every province of his empire, and allured ſtrangers from moſt parts of Europe; ſo that the place was even well peopled, and had not the appearance of a city ſo lately founded.

The adjacent country is generally covered with woods, conſiſting of various kinds of pines, birch, alder, aſpine, and other trees natural to the northern climates.

To

To the ſouthward, eſpecially along the ſhore towards Peterhoff, the country in ſummer is very pleaſant, with country-ſeats, corn-fields, and meadows interſperſed.

The river Neva falls out of the Ladoga Lake at Sluſſelburgh, a ſtrong caſtle, about ſixty verſt above St Peterſburgh. It is a noble ſtream of clear, wholeſome water, with this peculiar quality, that it is ſeldom muddy. It contains a great variety of excellent fiſh, which ſupply the market all the year, and is navigable to the Ladoga by flat-bottomed veſſels.

The woods on each ſide are ſtored with game; ſuch as hares, which are white as ſnow in winter, and turn brown in ſummer; wild-deer, bears, and wolves; the laſt are ſo bold that I have know them, in the night-time, carry off a dog from a man's foot, in croſſing the river on the ice. There are alſo elks about the Lake of Ladoga. As for wild-fowl, few places can boaſt of greater variety. The chief are theſe;

theſe; the urhaan, called in French *coq limoge*; this bird is black, with beautiful red ſtreaks about its head and eyes. The cock is about the ſize of a turkey; the hen is leſs, and of a brown colour. The heath-cock, in French *coq de bruiere*, of the ſame colour and marks as the former, but not ſo large. The partridge, which the French call *gilinot*. Theſe three kinds perch on trees; and in winter feed on fir-tops, and on crane-berries, which they ſcrape from under the ſnow. There is alſo found here the common Engliſh partridge; it is however but rare. The tarmachan, a bird well known in the northern parts of England, and in Scotland, are here in plenty.

As ſoon as the ice goes off in the ſpring, vaſt flocks of water-fowl come hither from the Caſpian Sea, and other ſouthern regions, to hatch. Theſe conſiſt of ſwans, geeſe, a variety of wild ducks, teal, &c.

Snipes and wood-cocks breed here, many of which are catched by the Ruſſians, who are excellent fiſhers and ſportſmen.

From

From St Peterſburg we directed our courſe along the weſtern bank of the Neva, till we came to the brick-works. The weather being very hot, we halted here a few hours, and in the evening purſued our journey to a ſmall river which falls into the Neva, about thirty verſt above St Peterſburgh. At this place we let our horſes go to graſs, and lay in our waggons till the morning; but were much moleſted by the gnats and muſkitos.

Next morning we continued our journey, and paſſed a village called Iſhora, where the inhabitants ſpeak a language, and wear a dreſs different from the Ruſſian, though they profeſs the ſame Greek religion. It is probable they are the deſcendants of a colony formerly brought hither from ſome of the provinces of Livonia.

Next day we came to the Volchova, a great river iſſuing from a lake called Ilmen, not far diſtant from the city of Novogorod, which diſcharges itſelf into the Ladoga. Here we left our horſes, and, putting our waggons

waggons and carriages on board barques, went up the river, uſing oars or ſails, by turns, as neceſſity obliged us. The banks of the Volchova are covered with many villages, and fruitful corn-fields, intermixed with natural woods. We found as we went along plenty of fiſh and country proviſions.

The 19th, we arrived at Novogorod Velikoi, or the Great Novogorod, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from many leſſer towns of the ſame name. This city ſtands about two hundred verſt ſouth-eaſt from Peterſburgh. The Volchova runs through the middle of it, over which there is a wooden bridge defended by a fortreſs. There are many well built churches in the town, and a great number of monaſteries in the neighbourhood, pleaſantly ſituated, which form a very agreeable proſpect. It was formerly a place of great note, but is now much decayed. Here is an archbiſhop who enjoys a very conſiderable revenue.

July

July 22d, having put our carriages on board another barque, we ſailed up the river to the Lake Ilmen; and, leaving it on our right hand, entered a ſmall river called Mſta, and at night came to Brunitz, a large village, thirty verſt from Novogorod. Here we diſcharged our boats; and, having procured horſes, we proceeded next morning thirty verſt to the village of Zaytzoff, from thence to Kraſnyſtanky, and then to Kreſtitſky, where we changed horſes, with which we travelled to Yaſhilbitza. Here begin the Valday-hills, which run to a great diſtance from eaſt to weſt, but are only about twenty or thirty verſt broad. They are moſtly covered with wood. We came next to the town of Valday; this place is pleaſantly ſituated at the foot of the hills, adjoining to a large lake of the ſame name, in the middle of which is an iſland, whereon ſtands a monaſtery. The country in the neighbourhood is hilly, but not mountainous, exhibiting a beautiful variety of plain and riſing grounds.

The

The next ſtage is Zimogory, and after that Viſhnoy-volotzoke. Here is a canal of conſiderable extent, cut by Peter the Firſt, which opens a communication by water from St Peterſburgh to all the places on the Volga, and many other parts of Ruſſia, and proves a great encouragement to trade, and very advantageous to the merchant, in ſuch extenſive tracts of land.

Next day we came to Torſhoak, a ſmall town.

The 29th, we arrived at Tweer, a populous and trading town, defended by a caſtle; it is the capital of a province, and a biſhop's ſeat. It derives its name from a rivulet in the neighbourhood, called Tweertza, and ſtands on the banks of the famous river Volga.

The Volga, known formerly by the name of Rha, has its ſource not far to the weſtward of Tweer. At a ſmall diſtance from the ſource of the Volga, two other noble rivers take their riſe; the Dnieper, or Boryſthenes, which run into the Black Sea

Sea at Otzakof, and the Duina, which falls into the Baltic at Riga.

The Volga, after viſiting in its courſe to the ſouth-eaſt many fruitful countries, diſcharges itſelf into the Caſpian Sea, about ſixty verſt below Aſtrachan; and, in all this long courſe, there is not a ſingle cataract to interrupt the navigation. As to fiſh, no river in the world can afford greater variety, better of their kind, nor in larger quantities.

Here we taſted the ſterlett, a fiſh much and generally eſteemed; it is of the ſturgeon kind, but ſeldom grows above thirty inches long. It is found in other rivers of Ruſſia; but the Volga produces the beſt and in greateſt plenty. The caviare, or ſpawn, is very good to eat raw, after being cleaned and dreſſed. I never could find a fiſherman who had ſeen their fry.

The ſame day, having changed horſes, we proceeded on our journey to Gorodna, a large village, on the weſt bank of the Volga. From this place is ſeen a charm-

ing landſkip, containing a full view of the windings of that river.

From hence, after paſſing many villages, we came to Kleen, a pretty large town, and the laſt ſtage to Moſco. The country between Kleen and Moſco is pleaſant, having many tufts of wood, of unequal bigneſs, ſcattered among the corn-fields, that contribute to beautify the country, which had no great appearance of fertility.

About ſeven verſt from Moſco we paſſed through a large village, called Ffeſwatzky, inhabited by Chriſtians of the Eaſtern church, named Georgians; their ancient country was Gurgiſtan, now one of the northerly provinces of Perſia; they were driven from their native country by the perſecution of the Perſians; and, flying into Ruſſia, they there found an hoſpitable reception, many of them being employed in the ſervice of the Emperor.

From this place there is a view of the city of Moſcow, and, at this diſtance, few cities in the world make a finer appearance;

ance; for it ſtands on a riſing ground, and contains many ſtately churches and monaſteries, whoſe ſteeples and cupolas are generally covered either with copper gilt, or tin plates, which ſhine like gold and ſilver in the ſun.

Auguſt 2d we arrived at the city of Moſco. I have omitted the names and diſtances of many inconſiderable places through which we paſſed; let it ſuffice, that the diſtance between St Peterſburgh and Moſco is about ſeven hundred and thirty verſt; and, although the hot weather detained us long on the road, in winter the journey is eaſily performed with ſledges in three days.

On the 10th of Auguſt, my friends, Meſſieurs Lange and Girvan, arrived here in their way to China, on a meſſage from the Czar to the Emperor of China: The firſt was a Swede, and the other a phyſician, from the county of Air in Scotland.

We ſtayed in Moſco about three weeks, having many things to prepare for ſo long a journey. This city, ſtanding on an eminence,

nence, as was already obſerved, commands an extenſive proſpect of a fine plain country, adorned with woods and clumps of trees, monaſteries, and gentlemen's ſeats; The river Moſco runs almoſt through it, which, emptying itſelf into the Volga, preſerves a communication with all the ſouthern parts of Ruſſia, and even with Perſia. From theſe advantages in ſituation, this place is very convenient for trade, which flouriſhes here to a conſiderable degree.

The city is fortified with a ſtrong brick-wall, called Beligorod, having embraſures and a ditch. Within this is another wall, called Kitaygorod: This laſt incloſes what is called the Crimlin, in which is the old imperial palace, compounded of a number of buildings, added to one another at different times. Some of the apartments are very ſpacious, particularly that called Granavitapallata, where audience was given to foreign ambaſſadors: Adjoining to the palace are many edifices, where were held the

the courts of juſtice: Here alſo ſtands a lofty tower, wherein is hung the largeſt bell in the world, called Ivan Veleke, weighing about ten thouſand poods; which, reckoning each pood at near thirty-ſix pounds Engliſh, will amount to about an hundred and ſixty ton weight. Beſides theſe, there is a cathedral church, and an arſenal, well furniſhed with braſs cannon, mortars, and other warlike ſtores. Beyond the brick-walls, already mentioned, there is an earthen one, of great circumference, round the whole; and, without this, the ſuburbs alſo are very extenſive.

The great plenty of proviſions in this place ſurpriſed me not a little; I found here fruits of different kinds, which I did not expect, particularly excellent melons, and arboozes, or water-melons.

Auguſt the 21ſt, we ſhipped our baggage on board ſix ſmall barques, adapted by their conſtruction, either for ſails or oars, as ſhould be moſt convenient, and fell down the river. The ambaſſador only remained

at

at Moſco, waiting for ſome diſpatches from court. In the evening we paſſed Koluminſka, a village pleaſantly ſituated on the ſouth ſide of the Moſco river, near which is a large country-houſe, with gardens and orchards, belonging to the court.

October 3d, we came to Kolumna, a fortified town. Next day, the wind being favourable, we hoiſted ſail, and, after going about three verſt, entered the river Oka, into which the Moſco falls and loſes its name. The Oka riſes in the Ukrain, and runs to the ſouth-eaſt; it contains a great quantity of water, and is navigable very far up the country.

The 9th, we arrived at Pereſlave-reſanſky, a large town to the left, ſituated about a verſt from the river Oka; it is the ſeat of an archbiſhop, and the country around is very fruitful in corn.

The 16th, we came to Kaſſimova, formerly the reſidence of a Tartar Prince; but the family is now converted to Chriſtianity, and retains only the old name of Kaſſi-

Kaſſimoſky Czarevitz. The place is at preſent inconſiderable. There are ſtill here a few Mahometan Tartars, who are allowed the free exerciſe of their religion, and have a ſmall oratory. I accompanied our interpreter to viſit one of them, an old acquaintance of his: He was a very decent man; we ſaw a horſe newly killed, which they intended to eat; they prefer this kind of food to beef, and invited us to ſhare their repaſt, which we declined, pretending we had not time.

The 17th we left Kaſſimova, and the 21ſt arrived at Murum, a pretty large town, and a biſhop's ſee. The country produces plenty of corn. About this place, there are a few idolatrous Tartars, who live in little dirty cottages, thinly ſcattered; they are a very ſimple and harmleſs people; how or when they ſettled here is not known.

The 22d we paſſed a large village, called Paulovo-perevoz, the property of Prince Tzerhaſkoy. Its ſituation is on the ſouth ſide

ſide of the river: Here the banks are much higher than above this place.

We came the 23d to Niſhna-novogorod, a great town, defended by a caſtle, ſtanding on the high banks of the Oka, oppoſite to where it loſes itſelf in the Volga, which now forms a mighty ſtream.

The following day we dined at the governor's, where I ſaw General Creutz, and ſeveral other Swediſh officers, who had been taken priſoners at Poltava, and lived here at large.

The 25th we ſailed from Niſhna, and ſoon entered the Volga. The wind being northerly, we run along at a great rate; but, in the night, the river was ſuddenly filled with floating ice, which drove us on a ſand bank, where we lay a-ground that night and all the next day; however, after much labour and fatigue, we got clear, although the floating ice ſtill continued. At laſt the wind changed to the ſouth, and the weather turned milder, which enabled us to purſue our voyage.

We

We next paſſed Vaſily-gorod, and then Koſmo-deminnſko, ſmall towns, both on the right.

November 3d we came to Zaback-zar, a pretty large town, on the ſame hand.

In this country are caught the beſt and largeſt faulcons in the world, much eſteemed for their ſtrength and beauty, particularly by the Turks and Perſians, who purchaſe them very dear. The Ruſſians take few young hawks from the neſt, preferring the old ones, which they man very dextrouſly to fly at ſwan, gooſe, cran, or heron. The Tartars fly them at antelopes and hares. I have ſeen them take a wild duck out of the water, when nothing of her could be perceived but the bill, which ſhe was obliged to put up for air. Some of them are as white as a dove. The manner of catching them is very ſimple: They erect a tall pole upon a hill, free from wood, on a bank of the river, near which is placed a day-net, under the net ſome ſmall birds are faſtened by a cord, which the

hawk-catcher pulls to make them flutter, on the appearance of the hawk, who obſerving his prey, firſt perches on the pole, and, when he ſtoops to ſeize the birds, the perſon, who is concealed by the buſhes, draws the net and covers him.

The 4th, we paſſed Kay-gorod, and the 5th, Swiiaſſky, the firſt on the left, and the other on the right hand. This evening we arrived before the town of Cazan, and hauled our boats into the mouth of a ſmall river, from which the town has its name, called Cazanka. We intended to continue our voyage directly to Aſtrachan; but, before we had made the neceſſary preparations at Cazan, the winter ſet in, and, on the 6th of September, the Volga was filled with floating ice; this determined us to winter at that place; we therefore unloaded the boats, and came to the city, where we were hoſpitably received by the governour.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

### *Occurrences during our ſtay at Cazan; our journey thence to Aſtrachan.*

CAZAN is about ſeven hundred and thirty-five verſt from Moſco by land, but much more by water: It is ſituated about five verſt to the north of the Volga, on a high bank of the rivulet Cazanka, which is navigable from this place to the river. The town is ſtrong by ſituation, and defended by a caſtle, fortified with walls of brick: Within the citadel are the cathedral church, the palaces of the archbiſhop and governor, and the apartments for the courts of juſtice: The town is fenced

fenced with a ditch and paliſades. The ſuburbs are inhabited chiefly by mechanics, except a ſtreet or two poſſeſſed by Mahometan Tartars, the poſterity of the ancient natives; they live very decently, have the free exerciſe of their religion, and many other privileges; ſome of them are very rich by the trade they carry on to Turkey, Perſia, and other places.

Cazan was anciently the capital of a part of Tartary, and the ſeat of government, where the royal family reſided. It was taken from the Tartars by Czar Ivan Vaſiloviz, in the year fifteen hundred and fifty-two, in conſequence whereof, an extenſive country to the ſouthward eaſily fell into his hands. The conquered Princes were converted to Chriſtianity, and had lands aſſigned them in their own country, where the family ſtill ſubſiſts.

The country adjacent is very pleaſant and fertile, producing wheat, rye, barley, oats, and ſeveral kinds of pulſe. The woods to the ſouth and weſt conſiſt of ſtately

ly oaks, ſufficient to ſupply all the navies in the world; and from hence St Peterſburgh is abundantly furniſhed with timber for all the purpoſes of ſhip-building, by an eaſy conveyance all the way by water. The woods to the north and eaſt, which are of prodigious extent, conſiſt of trees of all ſorts.

In the ſpring, when the ſnow melts, the Volga overflows all the low grounds, ſometimes to a great diſtance; the conſequence is the ſame with that produced in Egypt, by the inundations of the Nile; for the mud, carried down by the ſtream, fertilizes the country to a great degree; ſo that on the iſlands in the Volga, ſome whereof are very large, and overgrown with tall trees, I have found plenty of excellent aſparagus.

Beſides the ſterlett there are plenty of ſturgeon, and a fiſh about the ſize and near the ſhape of the largeſt ſalmon, which is very delicious, and, for the whiteneſs of its fleſh, is called the white fiſh.

The

The woods afford abundance of game; and, in the ſpring, great numbers of water-fowl come hither to hatch from the Caſpian Sea. At Cazan we found good beef, mutton, and tame poultry, and proviſions of all kinds very reaſonable.

There is here a conſiderable manufactory of Ruſſia leather, the hides here being reckoned the beſt in the empire: Great quantities of this leather are exported to Leghorn, and other parts of Europe, and may be conſidered among the ſtaple commodities of this country: The ſtrong ſmell of this leather is acquired in the dreſſing, for inſtead of oil, common in other places, they uſe a kind of tar, extracted by fire from the bark of the birch-tree; which ingredient the Ruſſes call deuggit, and which tree is here in greater abundance than in other parts of the world; and then they dye them with logwood.

Beſides the idolatrous Tartars, formerly mentioned, there are two pretty numerous tribes called the Tzerimiſh and Tzoowaſh, they

they ſpeak a language quite different from the Mahometan Tartars in theſe parts, who uſe a corupted dialect of the Arabic. The Mahometans likewiſe have ſome learning; but the Tzerimiſh and Tzoowaſh have none. They have a tradition among them, that, in former times, they had a book on religion; but, as no body could read it, a cow came and ſwallowed it. They pay great veneration to a bull. From whence they came is unknown; but, from their complection, it is probable they are from Aſia. They live by agriculture, and ſeem to be an inoffenſive kind of people. Their huntſmen offer in ſacrifice, to ſome deity, the firſt creature they catch. Hence ſome curious men have imagined theſe people part of the ten tribes of the Jews, expelled by Shalmanezer. I advance this only as a conjecture, which every reader may follow, or not, as he pleaſes.

By accident I met with an Engliſhman at this place. He was by trade a carpenter,

ter, and had been in the Ruſſian ſervice; but, being ſuſpected of deſerting, he was condemned to baniſhment, to this country, for a certain time; and, notwithſtanding that was elapſed, the poor man, deprived of all means of aſſerting his liberty, remained ſtill in the ſame ſituation. He bought a Tzerimiſh wife, from her father, for ſix rubles, about thirty ſhillings Sterling. He brought her to viſit me. She was a woman of a cheerful and open countenance, and dreſſed in the manner of her country; of which, for its ſingularity, I ſhall give a ſhort deſcription.

Her hair was plaited round her head, in many locks, but that on the back part longer than the reſt, at the end of which was tied a taſſel of red ſilk, and in the middle a ſmall round braſs bell. About her head was a fillet ſet with ſmall ſhells, inſtead of jewels, and hung all round with ſilver pence. Above this was a piece of linen ſo artfully plaited and done up, that it looked

looked like a grenadier's cap; at the top was a ſilk taſſel, with another braſs bell, which gingled as ſhe turned her head. The reſt of her dreſs was clean, though homely; and the whole ſeemed becoming enough.

I think the cold is here more intenſe than at St Peterſburgh, though it is five or ſix degrees farther ſouth. In going about three miles from town, in a clear day, I had my face, fingers, and toes frozen, notwithſtanding I was not half an hour on the road. I applied the common cure, that is, rubbing the numbed parts with ſnow, which I found perfectly effectual.

December 24th, our ambaſſador arrived from Moſco. At the ſame time came an expreſs from court, with the important news of the crown Princeſs (as ſhe was commonly called) being ſafely delivered of a ſon, chriſtened by the name of Peter. She died ſoon after her delivery, univerſally lamented for her many rare and excellent virtues. She was of the Wolffenbuttle family, and wife to Alexy Petrovitz, the Cza-

revitz. Beſides this young Prince, ſhe left a Princeſs called Natalia.

At Cazan we found two Swediſh generals, Hamilton and Roſen, and many other officers of diſtinction, taken priſoners at Poltava, who were no farther confined than by having a ſoldier of the garriſon to attend them at their lodgings; and, by the generoſity of the governour, lived as eaſily as circumſtances would allow. Theſe gentlemen were invited to all the public diverſions; and, by their polite and agreeable behaviour, contributed not a little to our paſſing the winter with a good deal of pleaſure, in ſuch a remote part of the world.

Upon the banks of the Cazanka ſtands a monaſtery, very pleaſantly ſituated. I accompanied our interpreter to viſit the abbot, who received us in a very friendly manner. He would not, however, give the interpreter his bleſſing, nor admit him into the church, during divine ſervice, unleſs he pulled off his wig. He, profeſſing the

the communion of the Greek church, expoſtulated a little with the prieſt, telling him that their learned biſhops at Moſco made no ſuch ſcruples. The abbot replied, that it was contrary to the rules of diſcipline to allow any man to enter the church with his head covered.

The time was now come when we expected to leave Cazan. Our boats were ready in the beginning of May, but the Volga was ſtill ſo high and rapid, that it was reckoned dangerous to proceed till the flood ſubſided; for the force of the ſtream frequently carries veſſels from their courſe into the woods, where the water retiring, leaves them on dry land.

At laſt, on the 4th of June 1716, we left Cazan in eight barks, and rowed down the river with great velocity. In the night, one of our boats was driven, by the rapidity of the current, among the woods, and ſtuck faſt between two trees, up which the people climbed, being apprehenſive of danger.

ger. The conſequence, however, was not ſo fatal as the circumſtances were alarming; for the veſſel was got off next day with inconſiderable damage.

The 7th, we paſſed a ſmall town called Tetooſk, and the 9th Sinbirſky, pretty large, and the capital of a province of that name, both to the right. Sinbirſky is defended by a caſtle. Near this place are evident marks of camps and entrenchments, which I was told were the works of the great Tartar general called Timyrak-ſack, or Lame Timyr, or Tamerlane, who came to this place with a great army; but, being informed of an inſurrection in his own country, Samarkant, now Bucharia, returned home.

The 10th, we put off from Sinbirſky with the wind contrary, which greatly retarded our progreſs. We paſſed two hills, one of them exhibiting a very beautiful proſpect, the other containing mines of ſulphur, as clear as amber. We paſſed alſo a mound of ſand, of conſiderable bigneſs, in the

the middle of a plain, where they ſay was buried a famous Tartar Prince called Mamay.

The 20th, we arrived at the town of Samara, ſituated to the left, in a fine plain. The place is but ſmall, and fortified only with a ditch and paliſades, with wooden towers at proper diſtances, mounted with cannon, ſufficient to defend it againſt the incurſions of the Tartars, called Kara Kalpacks, or Black Caps, who inhabit the deſert to the eaſtward of this place.

This tribe of Tartars is not very conſiderable, and, when their chiefs are united, which ſeldom happens, can ſcarce raiſe above ten or twelve thouſand men, who are all mounted on horſeback; becauſe, in their long marches, to rob and plunder their neighbours, nothing but horſe could be of any uſe. They live always in tents, with their flocks, removing from place to place, as led by inclination or neceſſity. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and ſabres; ſome of them uſe fire-arms. While we were

were at Samara, the inhabitants were alarmed with the approach of two or three thouſand of theſe people, who encamped about three miles diſtant. From one of the towers I could plainly ſee their camp, and them riding about it. As they had not artillery, the garriſon was in no danger, tho' ſo weak, however, that it durſt not at this time attack them. The people were obliged to keep a conſtant watch to defend their cattle. This place is reckoned about three hundred and fifty verſt diſtant from Cazan.

The 21ſt, having provided freſh hands for the navigation of our barks, we departed from Samara; and, the weather being calm, rowed down the river, which is here very broad. The weſtern bank is very high, but the eaſtern quite flat. The fields on both ſides are very fruitful, but eſpecially to the weſt, where the graſs grows very high, intermixed with ſage, thyme, and other herbs; there are alſo ſome woods of oaks. A few hundred acres of ſuch land would

would be of great value in England, tho' it is here waſte and uncultivated.

We came the 25th to the Iſmeyovi-gory, or Serpent-hills, ſo called from the windings of the river at this place; and, after paſſing ſeveral towns, and many villages, all on the right, we landed at Saratof, a large town on the ſame ſide, about eight hundred and fifty verſt from Cazan. It is but ſlightly fortified with a ditch, wooden-walls, and towers mounted with cannon, and defended by a garriſon of regular troops and Coſſacks.

We dined next day with the Governour, who entertained us with great variety of proviſions, particularly fiſh, and very fine mutton.

After dinner, a party of us croſſed the river, to viſit a great horſe-market, held by the Kalmuck Tartars. We ſaw about five or ſix hundred of theſe people aſſembled in a field, with a number of horſes all running looſe, except thoſe on which the Tartars were mounted. The buyers came from

from different parts of Ruſſia. The Tartars had their tents pitched along the river ſide. Theſe tents are of a conical figure. There are ſeveral long poles erected, inclining to one another, which are fixed at the top into ſomething like a hoop, that forms the circumference of an aperture for letting out the ſmoke, or admitting the light. Acroſs the poles are laid ſome ſmall rods, from four to ſix feet long, and faſtened to them with thongs: This frame is covered with pieces of felt, made of coarſe wool and hair. Theſe tents afford better ſhelter than any other kind, and are ſo contrived, as to be ſet up, taken down, folded, and packed up, with great eaſe and quickneſs, and ſo light, that a camel may carry five or ſix of them. Where the Chan, or any perſon of character, reſides, they are placed in ſtraight lines. Theſe Tartars are ſtrong made ſtout men, their faces broad, noſes flattiſh, and eyes ſmall and black, but very quick. Their dreſs is very ſimple, conſiſting of a looſe coat of ſheep ſkins tied with

with a girdle, a ſmall round cap, turned up with furr, having a taſſel of red ſilk at the top, leather or linen drawers, and boots. Their heads are all ſhaved, except a lock behind, which is plaited, and hangs down their backs.

They are armed with bows and arrows, a ſabre and lance, which they manage with great dexterity, acquired by conſtant practice from their infancy. They are men of courage and reſolution; but much afraid of cannon, which puts their horſes in diſorder. As they are almoſt always on horſeback, they are excellent riders.

The dreſs of the women differs little from that of the men; only their gowns are ſomewhat longer than the coats of the men, a little ornamented, and bordered with party-coloured cloth. They wear earrings, and their hair all plaited in locks. The better ſort dreſs in ſilks in ſummer. It muſt be obſerved, for the honour of their women, that they are very honeſt and ſincere, and few of them lewd. Adultery is

a crime ſcarce ever heard of. The Tartars make very good and faithful ſervants; and the more mildly they are uſed the better they perform their duty; for their wandering unconfined manner of life naturally inſpires them with ſentiments of liberty, and averſion and hatred to tyranny and oppreſſion.

All their wealth is their flocks. Like thoſe who lived in the early ages of the world, they have camels, horſes, cows, and ſheep. The horſes are of a good ſize for the ſaddle, and very hardy; as they run wild till they are ſometimes ſix years old, they are generally headſtrong. They are ſold at this fair at five to fifteen or ſixteen crowns, and the ſtrong well ſhaped natural pacers much higher. They have few camels, but many dromedaries, who have two protuberances on their backs. Their cows are of a middle ſize; the ſheep large, having broad tails like thoſe in Turkey; the wool is coarſe, but the mutton very fine.

In

In the preceding century, a Kalmuck prince, named Torgott-Chorluke, came from Alack-Ulla, (which ſignifies the ſpotted mountains), a country ſituated between Siberia on the north, and India on the ſouth, to the borders of Ruſſia; and brought along with him about fifty thouſand families, or tents, as they ſometimes reckon. In his march weſtward to the Volga, he defeated Eyball-utzick a Tartar prince, who lived in tents beyond the river Enbo. Advancing forward, he met three other Tartar chiefs, named Kitta-haptzay, Malebaſh, and Etzan, whom he alſo defeated; and at laſt ſettled to the eaſt of the Volga, under the protection of the Ruſſians. Chorluke had ſix ſons. Dangtzinq, the eldeſt, ſucceeded him in the government or chanſhip.

The preſent Chan, named Aijuka, is the fourth from Chorluke, and is much eſteemed in the eaſt for his ſagacity and juſtice. I am informed that the reaſon why Chorluke left his own country, was a diſpute about the ſucceſſion to the chanſhip. He being

being engaged on the weakeſt ſide, and having unſucceſsfully tried his fortune in the field, at laſt took the reſolution of abandoning his own country altogether. Theſe people are generally called the Black Kalmucks, though they are not black, but only ſwarthy.

They have no money, except what they get from the Ruſſians, and their other neighbours, in exchange for cattle. With this they buy meal ſometimes, but moſtly cloth, ſilk ſtuffs, and other apparel, for their women. They have no mechanics, except thoſe who make arms. They avoid all labour, as the greateſt ſlavery; their only employment is tending their flocks, managing horſes, and hunting. If they are angry with a perſon, they wiſh he may live in one place, and work like a Ruſſian. Their language contains none of thoſe horrid oaths common enough in tongues of more enlightened nations. They believe virtue leads to happineſs, and vice to miſery; for, when deſired to do what they think

think wrong, they reply, in a proverb, 'Though a knife be ſharp, it cannot cut 'its own handle.'

On long marches, all their proviſions conſiſt of cheeſe, or rather dried curd, made up into little balls, which they drink when pounded and mixed with water. If this kind of food fails, they have always many ſpare horſes, which they kill and eat. They broil or roaſt the fleſh before the fire, on pieces of broken arrows, and never eat it raw, as is commonly believed, unleſs compelled by neceſſity. They have, indeed, large thick pieces of horſe fleſh, ſmoked or dried in the ſun, which they eat; but this cannot properly be called raw. I have taſted ſome of it, and thought it not amiſs.

As to their religion, I can ſay little: They are downright heathens; and have many lamas or prieſts, who can read and write, and are diſtinguiſhed by their yellow habits. Their high prieſt is called Delay Lama, and lives far to the eaſtward.

July

July 1ſt, we put off from Saratof, and the 2d, 7th, and 9th, paſſed the towns of Kamoſhinka, Czaritza, and Tzorno-yarr, all ſituated on the weſt bank, and fortified in the ſame manner as Saratof. At the firſt of theſe places, Captain Perry, an Engliſhman, with many workmen, was employed in cutting a canal between the Volga and the Don, which would have opened a paſſage to the Euxine ſea; but the ground being very hard, and riſing in ſome places conſiderably above the level, the enterpriſe was laid aſide, though the diſtance was not above fifty verſt.

From Tzorno-yarr to Aſtrachan, it is not ſafe for Ruſſians to travel on the weſtern banks of the Volga, on account of the Cuban Tartars, who are their enemies. To the eaſt, however, there is no danger, as the Kalmucks are friends. On the iſlands in the Volga I obſerved great quantities of liquoriſh growing wild.

The 13th, we arrived ſafe at Aſtrachan, and were lodged in the citadel. This place

was

was taken from the Tartars in the year 1554, by the warlike Czar Ivan Vaſilio-vitz; whereby all his conqueſts on the Volga were ſecured, and the way prepared for farther extending the Ruſſian dominion to the ſouth and eaſt, which hath been ſucceſsfully attempted ſince his time.

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

### *Occurrences during our Stay at Aſtrachan. Our Journey thence to Shamachy.*

ASTRACHAN is ſituated about ſixty verſt from the Caſpian Sea, on an iſland in the Volga, having the main branch of that river to the weſtward. It is fortified by a ſtrong brick-wall, with embraſures, and ſquare towers at proper diſtances. In the citadel are the cathedral church, governour's palace, and the public offices. There is a creek or haven for ſhips that navigate the river and the Caſpian Sea. The houſes are generally built with wood, con-

conveyed in rafts along the river; for the neighbouring country produces nothing, being all a barren deſert. To the weſtward there is no water to be found for many miles. The iſlands, however, adjacent to the town, are very fruitful, and produce excellent grapes, tranſplanted hither from Perſia and other parts; alſo water-melons, eſteemed the beſt in the world; and various kinds of muſk-melons, peaches, cherries, pears, apples, and apricots.

Here are ſeveral large vineyards, belonging partly to the court, and partly to private perſons. There is a Frenchman who ſuperintends them. The wines are very good when drunk on the ſpot, but cannot bear carriage, for the leaſt motion renders them inſipid. Were it not for this circumſtance, Ruſſia would be able, not only to ſupply itſelf abundantly with wine, but even other parts of Europe. This pernicious quality is attributed to the nitrous particles of the ſoil where the vines grow. I have myſelf ſeen, in the furrows made

for watering them, a whitiſh cruſt of ſalt: But the grapes, notwithſtanding, are very ſweet, without the leaſt tincture of tartneſs.

About a mile below the town are collected great quantities of common ſalt. The people dig pits, into which they introduce the water; which, being exhaled by the heat of the ſun, the ſalt is left upon the bottom. After gathering, they tranſport it along the river, in large barks of about five or ſix hundred ton. The gun-powder manufactory is a little above the town; in which, and in the mines of ſaltpetre, near this place, are employed a great number of workmen for the ſervice of the government.

The climate is healthy, though very hot. The weather is generally calm, during which great numbers of gnats muſkitos infeſt the inhabitants. Theſe vermine indeed are ſometimes diſperſed by a breeze from the ſea, which renders this place very pleaſant. They are hatched and ſheltered in the

the marſhes towards the ſea, which are ſo overgrown with ſtrong tall reeds that they are altogether impaſſable.

The Mahometan Tartars here live without the town, and have the ſame privileges as in other places. I met ſeveral of their women in the ſtreet with rings in their noſes, which were of different value, according to the rank of the perſon who wore them; ſome of gold, and others ſet with precious ſtones. On inquiring the reaſon of ſuch a ſingular ornament, I was told, that it was the conſequence of a religious dedication of theſe perſons to the ſervice of God: It is made by the parents, even while the mother is pregnant; in token whereof, as ſoon as the child is born, they put a ring in the right noſtril, which continues there till death. I have ſeen ſome with two ſuch rings.

Aſtrachan is a place of conſiderable trade to Perſia, Chiva, Bucharia, and India. The people of theſe nations have a common

caravanſery, where they live and expoſe their goods to ſale.

The Armenians carry on the greateſt part of the Perſian trade; for the Perſians themſelves ſeldom go out of their own country. There are a few Indians, or Banians, at this place, who have a ſtreak of yellow down their forehead, made with ſaffron or ſome other vegetable. They are a good-natured, innocent kind of people, and live moſtly on fruits.

The market is plentifully ſupplied with proviſions of all kinds; but eſpecially fiſh, of which no place that I know abounds with ſuch variety. After the ſale is over, which is uſually about ten o'clock, what remains of the common ſorts is thrown to the dung-hill, where the hogs and poultry feed upon them; and hence it happens that their very pork and fowls taſte of fiſh. It would be tedious to mention all the different kinds this place affords: I cannot however omit the carp, which for ſize exceeds all of that name I ever heard of. I

have

have ſeen ſome of them of more than thirty pound weight, very fat and luſcious. Thoſe caught in autumn are carried to Moſco frozen, and ſold there and in the places adjacent.

I obſerved alſo a great variety of uncommon birds, whereof I ſhall deſcribe a few that ſeemed moſt extraordinary.

The firſt I ſhall mention, called by the Ruſſians baba, is of a gray colour, and larger than a ſwan; he has a broad bill, under which hangs a bag that may contain a quart or more; he wades near the edge of the river, and on ſeeing a ſhoal of fry, or ſmall fiſhes, ſpreads his wings and drives them to a ſhallow, where he gobbles as many of them as he can into his bag, and then going aſhore, eats them, or carries them to his young. This bird I take to be the pelican.

The next is altogether white, except its feet, which are black; it is ſomewhat leſs than a heron, and has a long broad bill.

The

The Germans call this bird leffel-ganze, the Ruſſians kolpeck.

There is another about the ſame ſize, alſo white; but its feet are long and red, and its bill crooked and round, and as red as coral: Its wings are adorned with ſome bright ſcarlet feathers.

Beſides theſe, I ſaw a kind of duck, ſomething bigger than the common ſort, called turpan; it is eaſily tamed, and much admired for its beauty, and a certain kind of noiſe peculiar to itſelf. I have eat of all theſe fowls; but did not much reliſh them, on account of the fiſhy taſte with which they are all infected.

There are alſo patridges and buſtards, which need no deſcription. The Kalmucks, who are keen ſportſmen, particularly at hawking, in which they have arrived to a great perfection, kill the buſtards with bows and arrows: When they ſee them feeding, they ride in upon them at full ſpeed; and as the buſtard is a heavy bird, and mounts ſlowly, they have an opportu-

portunity of ſhooting them with broad-headed arrows.

On the banks of the Volga there is a ſpecies of deer of a brighter red, and ſomewhat larger than the fallow-deer; they have green horns, but not branched, about nine inches long, and covered with circles, riſing one above another to the point, which is very ſharp. This deer is very ſwift, and its fleſh excellent; it has a high ſnout of griſtle, which riſes very near to the eyes—a circumſtance which I have not obſerved in any other animal.

I ſaw alſo a ſmall lively creature, called an Aſtrachan hare, about the ſize of a ſquirrel, and of a reddiſh colour, remarkable for having the fore-feet very ſhort in proportion to the hind-feet; its tail is long, with a tuft of hair at the extremity; it burrows in the earth, and being a very pretty creature, I have ſometimes ſeen them in cages. The Kalmucks eat them very greedily.

While

While we were at Aſtrachan, an ambaſſador, arrived there, from the Chan of Chiva, going to St Peterſburgh. On his arrival he ſent, according to the eaſtern cuſtom, ſome ſmall preſent to our ambaſſador; they were brought by part of his retinue, and conſiſted of a hawking glove, a ſmall knife, an embroidered purſe, and ſome fruits.

Chiva is a large territory, lying about two or three days journey eaſtward from the Caſpian Sea; bounded by Perſia on the ſouth, and Bucharia to the eaſt. The capital, which bears the ſame name, is large and populous, and governed by a Chan, elected by the people. They are very troubleſome and dangerous, both to travellers and their neighbours, being frequently employed either in robbing the former, or making depredations on the latter. And though Chiva is well fortified, its ſituation, in ſo ſandy and barren a deſert, is its beſt defence.

One day, as I was walking through the ſtreets of Aſtrachan, I obſerved a very ſingular

gular appearance: It was a pretty Tartar lady, mounted aſtride upon an ox; ſhe had a ring in her noſe, and a ſtring drawn through the noſe of the ox, which ſerved inſtead of a bridle: She was dreſſed better than common, and attended by a footman. The ſingularity of the equipage, but particularly her extraordinary beauty, drew my attention. The Mahometan muſt not be confounded with the Kalmuck Tartars; the firſt are a well-looked civilized people in compariſon of the other.

Before I leave Aſtrachan it may be proper to rectify a miſtaken opinion, which I have obſerved frequently to occur in grave German authors, who, in treating of the remarkable things of this country, relate, that there grows in this deſert, or ſtepp, adjoining to Aſtrachan, in ſome plenty, a certain ſhrub or plant, called in the Ruſſian language Tartarſkey baraſhka, *i. e.* Tartarian lamb, with the ſkin of which the caps of the Armenians, Perſians, Tartars, &c. are faced. They alſo write, that this Tar-

tarſkey baraſhka partakes of animal as well as vegetative life; that it eats up and devours all the graſs and weeds within its reach. Though it may be thought that an opinion ſo very abſurd could find no credit with people of the meaneſt ſhare of underſtanding, yet I have converſed with ſome who have ſeemed much inclined to believe it;—ſo very prevalent is the prodigious and abſurd with ſome part of mankind.

In ſearch of this wonderful plant I walked many a mile, accompanied by Tartars who inhabit theſe deſerts: But all I could find out were ſome dry buſhes, ſcattered here and there, which grow on a ſingle ſtalk, with a buſhy top, of a browniſh colour; the ſtalk is about eighteen inches high, the top conſiſting of ſharp prickly leaves. It is true, that no graſs or weeds grow within the circle of its ſhade; a property natural to many other plants here and elſewhere. After further inquiry of the more ſenſible and experienced among the

the Tartars, I found they laughed at it as a ridiculous fable.

At Aſtrachan they have great quantities of lamb-ſkins, gray and black; ſome waved, others curled, all naturally, and very pretty, having a fine gloſs, particularly the waved, which, at a ſmall diſtance, appear like the richeſt watered tabby: They are much eſteemed, and are much uſed for the lining of coats, and the turning up of caps, in Perſia, Ruſſia, and other parts. The beſt of theſe are brought from Bucharia, Chiva, and the countries adjacent, and are taken out of the ewe's belly, after ſhe hath been killed, or the lamb is killed immediately after it is lambed; for ſuch a ſkin is equal in value to the ſheep.

The Kalmucks, and other Tartars, who inhabit the deſert, in the neighbourhood of Aſtrachan, have alſo lamb-ſkins, which are applied to the ſame purpoſes; but the wool of theſe being rougher, and more hairy, they are far inferior to thoſe of Bucharia or Chiva, both in gloſs and beauty, as alſo in the

the dreſſing, conſequently in value. I have known one ſingle lamb-ſkin of Bucharia ſold for five or ſix ſhillings Sterling, when one of theſe would not yield two ſhillings.

On the 5th of Auguſt we quitted Aſtrachan in five veſſels, three of them flat-bottomed, and of about an hundred and fifty tons burthen, with three maſts and ten guns each; the other two common barks. We failed from Aſtrachan about noon; and at night came to an anchor at a fiſhery, called Uttzugg. Both the banks are now flat; to the weſtward barren ſands, and to the eaſt marſhy and tall reeds, abounding with vermine; ſo that we neither eat nor ſlept in quiet, notwithſtanding all the precautions we could uſe. I muſt confeſs this place had an aſpect of horror, eſpecially when it is conſidered, that, beſides the wild and diſmal appearance of the banks, we were carried down a mighty river, into a great gulf, in many places of dangerous navigation, and whoſe ſhores are inhabited by

by inhoſpitable and barbarous nations; for ſuch I reckon all of them, except the Ruſſians and Perſians.

Next morning, at break of day, we got under ſail, and about ten entered the Caſpian Sea; into which the river diſcharges itſelf by ſeven or eight large channels, and many leſſer ones: Two only of theſe channels are navigable by ſhips of any burthen. At night we caſt anchor near four hillocks of dry ſand, caſt up by the ſea, called Tzeterey Bugory, computed to be about thirty verſt from the mouth of the Volga: All which diſtance we had not above ſix or ſeven feet water; and even this depth is very narrow; ſo that the paſſage is extremely dangerous in hard gales of wind.

The 7th, early, we again ſet ſail with a gentle breeze from the ſhore, which ſoon drove us into three fathom water, and out of ſight of land; the water however ſtill continued freſh as the river. About noon the wind ſhifted to the ſouth, which obliged us to come to an anchor, where we lay

lay for near three weeks in calms and contrary winds.

All this time we did not ſee a ſingle ſhip, beſides our own, except one Ruſs veſſel that came from Guilan in Perſia, with ſome Armenian merchants, who made a preſent to the ambaſſador of a baſket of oranges, melons, and other fruits, which was the more acceptable, as our own proviſions of that kind were all ſpent. As often as the weather would permit we got under ſail, and endeavoured to reach the road of Terky, a ſmall fortified town, belonging to the Ruſſians, on the north-weſt corner of the Caſpian Sea, where we might be ſupplied with proviſions; but the continual calms prevented our ſucceſs.

On the evening of the 26th of Auguſt the wind changed to the north-weſt; we hoiſted all the ſail we could, ſteering our courſe ſouth ſouth-eaſt, and before night paſſed the iſland of Tullen, *i. e.* of Seals; many of which animals haunt this place. It continued to blow hard the whole night;

night; and next morning we were in ſight of the mountains called Shaffkall, which were diſtant about fifteen leagues. We proceeded the whole day, edging always a little nearer to the ſhore.

The 28th, in the evening, it fell calm; and, being about ſix leagues off the land, we caſt anchor. Next day, the wind blowing fair, in the afternoon we paſſed the town of Derbent. The ambaſſador ordered the caſtle to be ſaluted with nine guns; but it ſeems the people are not accuſtomed to make any return. It is a place conſiderably large, and the frontier of Perſia in this quarter. It is fortified in the ancient manner, with a ſtrong ſtone-wall, which reaches from the mountains to the ſhore; ſo that no army can paſs this way, except mountaineers, or Tartars, who find roads every where. Derbent, being a place of great conſequence, is provided plentifully with cannon and ammunition, and a ſtrong garriſon, governed by a commandant appointed by the chan, or governor of Shamachy,

on

on which province it depends. It is reported that it was built by Alexander the Great. About the place there ſtill remain ſeveral monuments of antiquity; particularly large ſtones, with inſcriptions in uncommon characters. South from Derbent ſtands a very high mountain, called Shachdagh, the top of which is covered with ſnow the whole year round, though the vallies are exceedingly hot.

Auguſt the 30th, we arrived at Niezabatt, the place where we intended to land, on the territories of Perſia. It lies about two days journey eaſt from Derbent. There being no harbour, nor creek, we hauled up our ſhips upon the ſhore, which we performed with little trouble, as they were all flat-bottomed.

The ſhip in which was our Secretary, Monſieur Venigerkind, and ſeveral other officers, did not arrive till about three o'clock afternoon. The wind was now very high, and a great ſea upon the beach, which obliged them to drop an anchor in the open road;

road; but the wind blowing ſtill harder, it became dangerous to ride there; the ſkipper, therefore, ſlipt the cable, and ſtood out to ſea. The gentlemen, however, did not like their ſituation on board; and, being eager to get to land, ordered the maſter to run the ſhip aſhore, and they would be accountable for the conſequences; which he, a Hollander, in the Czar's ſervice, unwillingly complied with, under an eaſy ſail, about two miles eaſtward of the place where we lay. All hands went to their aſſiſtance, but without effect; for, though the ſhip had received no damage, yet the ſea run ſo high, that the boat could not be hoiſted out, to carry them to land.

In the mean time, the ſecretary, impatient of remaining on board in ſuch circumſtances, prevailed with one of the ſailors to carry him aſhore on his back: which being done, he took his way alone towards the other ſhips; but, his cloaths being drenched in the ſalt-water, and the road lying through deep ſands, he was ſoon fatigued,

and therefore retired nearer to the woods, in hopes of finding a more ſmooth and eaſy path. He diſcovered what he ſought; but, inſtead of leading him to the ſhips, it carried him away from the ſhore, and the right courſe, into thick incumbered woods; and in theſe circumſtances night overtook him, utterly ignorant of the diſmal and dangerous wild into which he had wandered. Thus deſtitute of all aſſiſtance, he climbed a tree to ſave himſelf from the wild beaſts with which theſe woods abound; and in this ſituation continued all the night, and till noon next day; for the people in his own ſhip never doubted of his having ſafely reached our tents; while we, on the contrary, had not the leaſt ſuſpicion of his having come aſhore. At laſt, however, about noon, his ſervant came, inquiring for his maſter, who, he told us, left the ſhip the night before. This account filled us all with anxiety and apprehenſion; as we certainly concluded he would either be torn to pieces by the wild beaſts,

or

or murdered by the ſavages who inhabit theſe coaſts. Immediate order was given for all our people to repair to the woods in ſearch of him. He was at laſt found wandering from path to path, without knowing one direction from another. When he came to the tents he looked ghaſtly and wild, and related many ſtrange ſtories of what he had heard in the night. All poſſible care was taken to alleviate his diſtreſs. During his ſleep, which was very diſcompoſed, he often ſtarted, groaned, and ſpoke; and, even after he awaked, he perſiſted in affirming that there were numbers of people round the tree, in the night, talking different languages. The imagination, no doubt, will naturally have a ſtrong effect on any man in ſuch uncommon circumſtances; for, though the ſecretary was a man of penetration and ſound judgment, in vain did we endeavour to undeceive him, by repreſenting that it was nothing but the jackals which made the noiſe he had heard.; and that, to be convinced of the

the truth of this affirmation, he needed only, at the approach of night, to ſtep a little from the tents, where he would hear the ſame ſounds repeated. All was to no purpoſe, ſince he inſiſted that the noiſe he heard was quite different from the yelpings of the jackals. He ſcarce ever recovered his former ſagacity and ſoundneſs of mind. I muſt confeſs the ſituation of this gentleman moved me not a little, as he was a man of parts and learning, with whom I had contracted an intimate friendſhip.

Since I have mentioned the jackals, it may not be improper to give a ſhort account of theſe animals. They are of a ſize larger than a fox, of the ſhape and colour of a wolf, with a ſhort buſhy tail. They dig burrows in the earth, in which they lie all day, and come out in the night to range for prey. They aſſemble in flocks among the woods, and frequently near towns and villages, when they make the hideous noiſe formerly mentioned, reſembling, in ſome meaſure, a human voice, or the

the noiſe of the Tartars and Coſſacks when they attack their enemies. They have fine noſes; and hence the vulgar opinion has ariſen, that they hunt prey for the lion. They are in great plenty all over Perſia, and eſteemed harmleſs creatures.

As ſoon as we landed, the ambaſſador deſpatched an interpreter to Schamachy, to notify his arrival to the governour of that place, and to deſire him to ſend camels and horſes to tranſport him thither. The interpreter was kindly received, and an order was immediately iſſued out for anſwering his demands.

September the 1ſt, the chan of Shamachy ſent an officer of diſtinction to ſalute the ambaſſador; and the next day a preſent of proviſions, conſiſting of an ox, ſome ſheep, with fruits and confections.

About ſix or eight leagues to the eaſtward of Niezabatt is a high rock, called Barmach, or the finger, upon the ſhore, which a great many of the Armenians viſit annually, to pay their devotions. They have

have a tradition, that the prophet Elijah lived ſome years at this place.

September 2d, we were a little alarmed with intelligence, that a conſiderable body of mountaineers had plundered ſome villages in our neighbourhood. We had not yet received any guard from the Perſians, and were therefore obliged to take every precaution poſſible for our defence. We armed all our own people, and all the ſailors; and, beſides theſe, we had twenty ſoldiers from the garriſon of Aſtrachan. Cannon were brought from the ſhips, and planted in proper places, to prevent a ſurpriſe. Theſe preparations ſeem to have intimidated the undiſciplined ſavages, for they never attacked us.

Two days journey eaſtward from Niezabatt ſtand Abſheroon and Backu, two conſiderable towns. At the former is a good harbour, reckoned the beſt in the Caſpian Sea, except that of Aſtrabatt, which lies in the ſouth-eaſt corner of it. All the reſt are

ſo

ſo dangerous, that they ſcarce deſerve the name of harbours.

In the neighbourhood of Backu are many fountains of Naphtha; it is a ſort of petroleum, of a brown colour, and inflammable nature. The Perſians burn it in their lamps; no rain can extinguiſh it; but the ſmell is diſagreeable. I have ſeen of it as clear as rock-water.

The Caſpian Sea is of an oblong irregular figure, about one hundred and fifty leagues in length, from north to ſouth, and forty or fifty leagues broad. The water is exceſſively ſalt, except where it is ſweetened by the Volga, which is at leaſt to the diſtance of ten leagues from the influx of that river.

The navigation of the Caſpian belongs ſolely to the Ruſſians; the Perſians, and other borderers, having nothing but fiſhing boats. It contains abundance of fiſh; but no ſhell-fiſh, except a kind of cockle, the ſhells of which are very pretty. In ſome places,

places, there is a great depth of water. The Perſians obſerve that, of late, the ſea has retired conſiderably from the ſhore; which they reckon ominous, preſaging ſome calamity to the kingdom. It has no tides, but ſuch as are cauſed by the wind; and, notwithſtanding the great quantities of water daily received, it continues nearly about the ſame height. Dr Halley has demonſtrated, that exhalation, in ſo hot a climate, is ſufficient to account for this phenomenon, without having recourſe to ſubterraneous paſſages.

The 4th, I was conducted by an Armenian merchant ſome leagues from our tents, to viſit a Perſian. We were received in a very complaiſant and friendly manner; the houſe was clean, and the floor ſpread with carpets. Our entertainment conſiſted of coffee and boiled rice.

On the 11th, arrived two Jeſuits from India, named Valery and Martinet, on their way to Rome. They petitioned the ambaſſador for a paſſage in one of our ſhips to

to Aſtrachan, which was granted. About this time many of our retinue began to be ſeized with different diſeaſes, particularly fevers, fluxes, and agues, which, in a few days, made ſuch progreſs, that, at the ambaſſador's table, where ſeldom fewer than ten dined, he and myſelf only were preſent. Theſe diſtempers exhibited a moſt diſagreeable proſpect, and made us wiſh earneſtly to leave a place that threatened our deſtruction. For this purpoſe, meſſengers were daily ſent to the chan of Shamachy to deſpatch the camels, horſes, and mules. Some of them, indeed, were already come, but not near the number we needed; for our numerous ſick could only be tranſported on litters carried by mules.

The 12th, a conductor, called Maymander, arrived, with a guard of Perſian ſoldiers, and ſome more cattle, which were ſtill too few. This officer is appointed by the Shach or King to guide ambaſſadors to court, and furniſh them with proviſions,

carriages, and lodgings, at the Shach's expence, from the time they enter the kingdom.

Having accommodated ourſelves in the beſt manner we could, we quitted Niezabatt on the 18th, keeping along the ſhore; and, at night, came to a ſmall village, about three agatz from Niezabatt. We found the houſes all empty, the people having fled to the woods or mountains on our approach.

The 20th, we reached a village about four agatz (an agatz is reckoned to be four Engliſh miles) from the former, where we lodged again in empty houſes; and the 21ſt proceeded four agatz further, to a brook of white and muddy water, where we pitched our tents. About noon, next day, we came to a fountain of pure water, under a great oak. Here we halted two hours, to refreſh the ſick; and, after travelling four agatz further, arrived at an old caravanſery; a long day's journey for people in ſuch diſtreſs.

The

The caravanſeries are generally large ſquare buildings, with a court in the middle. All round there are rooms for lodging travellers, and on one ſide a ſtable for horſes. They are of different ſizes and conſtructions, according to the bounty or ability of the founder. Some are built by charitable people, others by good kings. They are ſituated as near freſh water as poſſible, and about a day's journey from one another.

As there are no inns in the eaſt, theſe caravanſeries in ſome meaſure ſupply that defect, though nothing is found in them but ſhelter. They are, however, very convenient for travellers; and ſome of them can contain five hundred men, with their horſes. There is commonly an old man, who cleans the rooms, and fetches neceſſaries from the next town or village.

The 23d, we halted to refreſh the ſick; and here we buried two of our mechanics.

The 24th, we travelled to a ruinous caravanſery, about four agatz from the former.

mer. This was the firſt inſtance that occurred of remiſſneſs and inattention in the preſent government of Perſia; for the King, without attending to his own affairs, allows himſelf to be guided entirely by thoſe whoſe intereſt it is to deceive him. Nothing, in the judgment of a foreigner, can render any people more contemptible than the notorious neglect of ſuch uſeful public edifices. This day we received another ſupply of proviſions from the chan.

The 26th, we travelled to a plain within a league of Shamachy, where we lay all night, to be received into the town the day following, in form and ceremony, according to the cuſtom of Perſia. At this place died my friend, Captain Jacques de Villette. He was a gentleman of a good family in France, and a very worthy man. And, beſides the Captain, two ſervants died here.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

*Occurrences during our Stay at Shamachy. Our Journey thence to Tauris.*

THE 27th, in the morning, came the Kalentar and Dorruga, with many of the inhabitants, to pay their compliments to the ambaſſador. Theſe officers are next in rank under the chan, and have the ſole direction of affairs in his abſence. They brought ſome fine horſes, richly capariſoned, for the chief of the retinue. As we approached the place, we were met by other officers, particularly the Divan, Begg, and Iſh-agaſſy, and magiſtrates, all mounted on ſtately horſes, with rich furniture, which made

made a very ſplendid appearance. Before the ambaſſador's horſe two young fellows tumbled all the way, with great agility. About two o'clock we entered the city.

As we paſſed along the ſtreets, all the tops of the houſes were filled with ſpectators. At laſt, the ambaſſador arrived at the houſe of one of the principal officers, which was allotted entirely to him and his attendants. The houſes in Perſia are moſtly flat-roofed. As there is but little rain in this country, a very ſmall declivity is ſufficient to carry off the water. I compute the diſtance between Niezabatt and Shamachy to be about twenty-five agatz, or an hundred miles.

October 1ſt, I had a viſit from a gentleman well dreſſed in the Perſian habit, and was not a little ſurpriſed to hear him talk good High Dutch. After ſome converſation, he told me he was born at Dantzick; that in his youth he came to Perſia with a Poliſh ambaſſador, who died at Iſpahan. That, ſome differences ariſing between him

and

and his countrymen, to end the diſpute he turned Mahometan, and ſettled in Perſia, where he now enjoyed a ſmall ſalary as a linguiſt. He had often repented of this raſh ſtep; but, having a wife and children at Shamachy, he could not abandon them.

The day following, the chan, with a numerous retinue, paid a ceremonial viſit to the ambaſſador. The chan is a middle aged man, of a graceful aſpect, by birth a Georgian, of Chriſtian parents, but brought up at court from his infancy: And it muſt be confeſſed that his treatment of the ambaſſador was extremely obliging.

The 14th, the chan ſent an invitation to the ambaſſador to go a hunting, with horſes for that purpoſe. We marched about two or three miles to the eaſtward, till we came to a plain overgrown with ſhort reeds. We ſprung a number of pheaſants, ten or fifteen whereof were killed by the chan's hawks; and ſeveral hares were run down by the greyhounds, which were all ſent to the ambaſſador's lodgings.

About

About this time, there happened a misunderſtanding between the ambaſſador and ſecretary, by the imprudence of the latter. It is cuſtomary for the Shach to make preſents in money, or other things, to all ambaſſadors, according to the dignity of their reſpective maſters; and, though no money had yet been granted, the unlucky ſecretary, poor gentleman! not quite recovered, by an unſeaſonable and ill adviſed claim, pretended a right to part of the future donative. The ambaſſador, on the contrary, alledged, that the ſecretary was entitled to nothing from him, except the privilege of his table, and proviſions for his ſervants. Both my ſituation in the retinue, and an indiſpoſition, prevented my intermeddling in this diſpute. I only adviſed the ſecretary to poſtpone his claim till ſome more favourable opportunity. My advice, however, had no effect, for the difference ſtill increaſed, till the ſecretary fell ſick, and was confined to his lodgings, where he died ſuddenly, on the 5th of November.

This

This event was the more melancholy to me, in particular, as it was unexpected. By the death of this gentleman, I was deprived of another worthy friend. He was a Saxon by birth; was candid, honeſt, and ſincere; and much eſteemed by all his acquaintance, for his learning and capacity.

A few days after, there arrived at Schamachy a Perſian ambaſſador, who had been in France, and had returned homeward thro' Ruſſia. His behaviour in France, and in other places, had been little for the honour of his maſter. The miniſtry at Iſpahan had perfect intelligence of his whole conduct, which he came to underſtand; and, being afraid to undergo a trial at court, went directly to the city of Erivan, the place of his reſidence when in his own country, where, as it was reported, he poiſoned himſelf. He had treated a French engineer, whom he engaged in the ſervice of his maſter, ſo cruelly, that he died two days after coming to Shamachy.

The 25th, I dined with father Peter Ricard, in company with Monſieur Bourgard, a French merchant. This father hath lived as a miſſionary in different places of Perſia for many years: He had ſtudied phyſic, which he practiſed occaſionally, and thereby introduced himſelf to an acquaintance with many families of diſtinction: He is a man of a grave and ſober deportment, which procures him great reſpect: He has a ſmall congregation at this place, conſiſting only of Chriſtian Armenians, who have been converted from the communion of the Eaſtern to the Weſtern Church; for it is a capital crime to convert a Mahometan. Bourgard was employed by the Engliſh factory at Iſpahan, to buy raw ſilks here to be ſent to Aleppo.

The ambaſſador ſent a preſent to the chan, of ſables, and other rich furs, of conſiderable value; and had, in return, a fine horſe, with a ſaddle, bridle, and other trappings, mounted with gold.

Some

Some time after, there aroſe a diſpute between the ambaſſador and the chan, about the Shach's gratuity; the firſt thought the ſum offered was too ſmall, while the latter affirmed he had no authority for a greater allowance. The determination of this affair detained us longer than we intended to ſtay; however, in the mean time, camels and horſes were ordered to be got ready. After many meſſages on both ſides, the chan, unwilling to let the Ambaſſador depart unſatisfied, ſent Monſieur Bourgard with an offer of ten tomans (a toman is equal to three pounds Sterling,) a-day, during his journey to Iſpahan, and that ſum for three days only of the time he continued at Shamachy: This propoſal was at laſt accepted, and the money paid. I ſhall, before we leave this place, add a few remarks on the city and its environs.

Shamachy is ſituated in about 40 degrees north latitude: It was anciently part of Media; but now the capital of an extenſive province, called Shirvan. The city ſtands on

on the declivity of a hill, inclining to the ſouth, and riſes toward the top in form of an amphitheatre: The place is large, but the houſes are meanly built, excepting thoſe of the governour, the chief magiſtrates, and a few rich merchants; the ſtreets are narrow and irregular: The greater part of the inhabitants are Perſians; there is alſo a conſiderable number of Georgians and Armenians: The vulgar language is Turkiſh, but the people of diſtinction ſpeak Perſian. The air is more healthy than at places nearer to the Caſpian Sea.

Above the town, on the ſummit of the hill, ſtands an high edifice, having many windows and a gallery, in which, every day at the riſing and ſetting of the ſun, is held a kind of concert of muſic, compoſed of long trumpets, large drums, and hautboys, which make a dreadful ſound. It is reported, that this cuſtom is as ancient as the time of Alexander the Great.

There are alſo in the city ſeveral moſques, with high pillars adjoining, which the moulla

moulla or prieſt aſcends every day at twelve o'clock, to call the people to prayers; for the Mahometans uſe no bells. They have, beſides, ſeveral public baths, ſome for men, others for the women, to which both ſexes reſort daily for ablution, conformably to the law of their religion. The women go generally in companies of five or ſix, ſo concealed with a white veil, that nothing of them is viſible but the eyes and noſe. There are ſeveral ſpacious caravanſeries, very convenient for ſtrangers or merchants, who there expoſe their commodities, for which they pay a ſmall impoſt.

There is a conſiderable traffick at this place, particularly in raw ſilk, which is produced in the neighbourhood; the greateſt part whereof is purchaſed by the Engliſh and Dutch factories at Iſpahan, and ſent to Aleppo; alſo cotton, which indeed is moſtly ſold to the natives, and conſumed in ſtuffs for their own uſe. The country about Shamachy, beſides many kinds of fruits, produces plenty of wheat, barley, and very fine

fine grapes, from which the Chriſtians make very good wine; they keep it in great jars reſembling the Florence oil ones, which they depoſit under ground in their gardens, covering them above with a thin ſtone, neatly paſted about the edges, for the better preſervation of the liquor. When they give an entertainment, they ſpread carpets round the jar, which is generally placed in a ſhade, and on theſe the gueſts are ſeated.

About two miles to the northward of the city, ſtands a high mountain, named Guiliſtan-dagh, where are ſeen the ruins of an ancient caſtle, built of ſtone; it appeared not to be of Eaſtern architecture. I could procure no information who was the founder, or by whom it was demoliſhed. Adjoining to this mountain is another, on which are the tombs of two ſaints, or heroes; whither great numbers of devout people come annually to worſhip. I obſerved near theſe tombs, ſeveral hallowed rocks covered with ſmall ſhells brought hither by the worſhippers; I obſerved likewiſe,

wiſe, on the common rocks, many ſhells imprinted and petrified, which ſeemed very extraordinary.

December 4th, all things being prepared for our departure, we were furniſhed by the conductor, or maymander, with one hundred and ſixty camels, and near two hundred horſes and mules, on which we left Shamachy, travelling along the riſing grounds. We halted two days at an Armenian village, called Kalck-anii.

On the 7th, we deſcended into a deſert plain, called by the Ruſſians Mugan, and by the Perſians Kurdiſtan. At mid-night we came to ſome wells of brackiſh water, where we lodged in ſuch tents as are uſed by the inhabitants, which were prepared by the conductor.

We proceeded the 10th five agatz, to a little copſe-wood, where was found tolerable water, and the 11th, arrived at the river Kure, or Cyre, which we paſſed on a bridge of boats, and pitched our tents on the

the other ſide. The water of the river is ſweet and wholeſome.

About half a league above the bridge, the river Araxis, now Arras, falls into the Kure, which together form a conſiderable ſtream, that diſcharges itſelf into the Caſpian Sea, about a day's journey below the bridge, running northward all the way; but the mouth of the river is ſo choaked up with ſand, that it is navigable by no veſſel of any burden.

The river Kure divides the province of Shirvan from Kurdiſtan. The Kurdy, probably ſo called from the name of the river, are a very ancient people, and ſeem to be the ſame whom Xenophon, in the Anabaſis, calls Karduchi, who ſo ſtrenuouſly oppoſed his paſſage in his famous retreat from Artaxerxes. They are ſtill reckoned a brave people. Their horſes are moſt eſteemed of any in Perſia, both for beauty and ſtrength.

We left the Kure on the 13th, and proceeded ſeven agatz to Chuda-tzoolatzy, where

where the water was very brackiſh and muddy. The country around appeared plain as the ſea.

Setting out early next morning, we travelled ten agatz, and in the evening reached a brook of tolerable water, called Bolgar. This was the laſt day's journey in the plain of Mugan. The inhabitants, the Kurdy, live in tents all the year. The ſoil is very dry and barren, notwithſtanding the cattle are in good condition, and the mutton particularly very good.

While we halted about noon, ſome Perſian ſportſmen, who, by their dreſs, ſeemed perſons of diſtinction, pitched their tents near ours: They ſent the ambaſſador a preſent of wild-fowl, and an antelope. The ambaſſador invited them to ſhare a traveller's dinner. Three of the gentlemen accepted the invitation, but excuſed themſelves from eating any thing, pretending they had already dined; but it is well known that the Mahometans ſcruple to eat with Chriſtians; each of them, however, drank a diſh

of coffee, and an old man a dram of brandy. They had ſeveral greyhounds, and a couple of large hawks, which were trained to fly at antelopes; the hawks cannot hold indeed ſo ſtrong a creature as an antelope, but they fly about its head, and thereby retard its velocity, till the greyhounds, or horſemen, overtake it; for the antelope far out-runs any greyhound I ever ſaw. In this deſert, I have ſeen flocks of them conſiſting of two or three hundred.

In manning hawks to fly at antelopes, they ſtuff the ſkins of theſe animals with ſtraw, and feed the hawk between their horns, placing food there for that purpoſe; hence they are accuſtomed to hover round the head, which proves the deſtruction of theſe creatures. I was informed, that it is in this manner the Tartars manage hawks to fly at foxes and wolves. Theſe particulars may poſſibly appear immaterial; however, as they may contribute to amuſe the reader, it was thought not improper to inſert them.

After

After reſting the 16th, we travelled next day four agatz, to the foot of a very high mountain, where we found a few poor cottages, deſerted by their inhabitants on our approach. The water was in plenty and good. The weather was very cold, and no fire-wood could be got, except a little we brought along with us. One of our people ſtraggling too near the rocks, was dangerouſly wounded with a ſtone, thrown by ſome of theſe cottagers who had retired thither. On theſe rocks I ſaw a creature like a goat, called by the Germans Steinbuck; it is much bigger than the common kind of theſe animals, and its horns are of a prodigious ſize.

The 18th, we advanced five agatz farther; and the 19th, ſeven agatz, to a large village, called Katchoochana, where the Chan of Mugan has a good houſe. The weather being cold and froſty, we continued here all the 20th.

The 21ſt, we travelled five agatz, to a village under a great mountain, where was

a water mill for grinding corn, the firſt machine of that ſort I ſaw in Perſia.

The 22d, we came to a ſmall town called Aggar. The kalentar ordered the citizens to arm and oppoſe our entry; and, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances of our conductor, he perſiſted unalterable in his purpoſe, affirming he had no order to admit ſuch a body of armed men. He did not however refuſe us proviſions, wood and water, for money. We were therefore obliged to content ourſelves with theſe, and lodge in our tents on an open field, in cold weather.

Next day we proceeded two or three agatz, to a large populous village, where the people, in imitation of thoſe at Aggar, aſſembled in arms, and barricadoed all their entries, refuſing us admittance; they beat our quarter-maſter, a Perſian officer belonging to the conductor, for offering to force his way into the place. We therefore lodged again in the open air. They ſent out ſome fire-wood, and whatever elſe they could ſpare.

ſpare. I muſt confeſs I could ſcarce blame theſe people for their behaviour; becauſe, had we been admitted, the inhabitants muſt all have left their own houſes; and where could a parcel of poor women and children have found ſhelter in ſuch extremity of cold.

The 24th, we continued our journey between two great mountains, where the north wind was very piercing. We paſſed an old ruinous caravanſery, and arrived in the evening at an empty village, which the natives had forſook the day before. All next day we halted, being Chriſtmaſs.

The 26th we marched about four agatz, to another village. The inhabitants were ſo hoſpitable as to afford us lodging, but charged dear for every thing we needed, eſpecially wood, which was bought at the rate of three-pence for ſeven pounds.

On the 27th we travelled over exceeding high mountains, from whence, I was told by an Armenian merchant in our company, might be ſeen, in a clear day, the top of the

the famous mount Ararat, called by the Perſians Aggry, by the Armenians Meſſin; the ſummit is conſtantly covered with ſnow, and often with a cloud: It is the higheſt of all that chain of mountains in Armenia, on which we then ſtood.

How far my information might be true, I cannot determine; but certain it is, that when the Armenians ſee this mountain, they make a ſign of the croſs, and ſay their prayers, as is their cuſtom, when they approach any place which they eſteem ſacred.

In the evening we arrived at the city of Tauris, Terris, or Tebris, as it is pronounced by ſome. The ambaſſador was met, about half a mile from the place, by the kalentar, and chief officers, who, after the common ſalutations, conducted him to his lodgings. Our baggage was depoſited in a large caravanſery in the neighbourhood.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

*Occurrences during our ſtay at Tauris: Our journey thence to Iſpahan.*

TAURIS is a large and populous city, the capital of the province of that name, and the reſidence of the chan. It is ſituated in a fruitful plain, encompaſſed by the high rocks of mount Tauris, about ten days journey from Shamachy, and twenty-five from Iſpahan; I mean to a caravan. It is ſuppoſed to be the ancient metropolis of Media. It is ſtill of conſiderable extent; but not near what it has been. There are yet to be ſeen many curious remains of ancient grandeur; particularly an old temple, converted into a moſque,

moſque, now neglected and ruinous. The roof is ſupported by many ſtately pillars of porphyry, almoſt entire, ſome whereof are of a greeniſh colour, with other colours and veins of gold interſperſed. The proportions ſeemed to be regular, and the workmanſhip very fine and curious. In ſhort, I am unable to deſcribe the ſymmetry and beauty of theſe pillars, and wonder how they have eſcaped the fury of ſo many barbarians. It is no leſs ſurpriſing where were got ſuch maſſy pieces of marble, ſeeing nothing like them is now to be found in this country. Theſe particulars demonſtrate the ancient grandeur and riches of this place. It is, however, a deplorable truth, that this country in general hath undergone ſo many revolutions ſince the time of Alexander the Great, her firſt conqueror, that, a few places excepted, the preſent names, and deſcriptions of cities and provinces, bear almoſt no reſemblance to thoſe of antiquity, ſo that one can ſcarce imagine them accounts of the ſame places:

To

To ſuch a degree hath time and barbarous invaders changed the appearances of things. Fire and ſword have raged to deſtroy magnificent cities; ſtately temples and palaces are demoliſhed; whole provinces depopulated; and fruitful fields converted into a deſert, by diverting the ſprings, or turning the rivers that watered them into other channels. Such are the conſequences of lawleſs ambition on the fineſt productions of nature and art. The laſt is a circumſtance to which few countries are ſo much expoſed as Perſia; for in the inland part of it there is almoſt no rain, which obliges the inhabitants to water all their vegetables from ſprings and brooks. They often convey even rivers ſeveral leagues, in channels under ground, for this purpoſe. The dew indeed is very plentiful, but would be inſufficient of itſelf for the purpoſes of vegetation.

The ſtreets of Tauris are narrow and irregular. The houſes are built with bricks made of mud, mixed with chopped ſtraw,

and dried in the ſun; the governour's palace indeed, and a few more houſes, are built of ſtone, and make a good appearance. The roofs are generally flat, and covered with a terrace. The walls are white-waſhed on the inſide, and look very white and clean. The floors of every houſe are ſpread with carpets, or mats, according to the circumſtances of the inhabitants. The people of diſtinction have great halls of audience in their outer courts, arched with ſquare bricks, which are plaiſtered and painted with flowers: This is done at a ſmall expence, and makes a very fine ſhow.

There are ſeveral well built moſques, with ſtately minorets, or pillars, which the moulla aſcends to call the people to prayers; alſo an high building for the muſic, that plays evening and morning, as mentioned at Shamachy. There are alſo ſome large caravanſeries; ſo that no ſtranger can be at a loſs for lodging at a ſmall expence. The city is quite open, having no caſtle,

caſtle, or fortification to defend it. Indeed one would imagine the deſert mountains, ſcarcity of water, and other obſtructions, would be a ſufficient defence againſt all invaſions: The fury of the Turks, however, in their wars with Perſia, ſurmounted all theſe obſtacles.

Tauris is ſupplied with water from a brook, called Shankuy, which runs through the city, and ſome ſprings in the neighbourhood. The inhabitants are moſtly Perſians, though there are among them many Armenians. They have a conſiderable commerce in raw-ſilk, and manufactories of carpets, and ſilk and cotton ſtuffs. They have great crops of wheat and barley, when at the trouble and expence of watering the fields: But their principal ſupport is rice, brought from the province of Guilan, where it grows very plentifully; for this kind of grain, which of all other thrives beſt on wet land, agrees wonderfully with that rich moiſt ſoil near the Caſpian Sea.

The

The Capuchin miſſionaries have a convent at this place for the uſe of the Armenians of the Roman Catholic profeſſion; which is ſuperintended by two fathers of that order.

About a league from the city, on the road to Iſpahan, are ſeen the ruins of a bridge, on the top of a hill, where, I believe, no water has run ſince the deluge. It is ſaid that it was built by a whimſical prieſt, in order to introduce himſelf to the King, Shach Abbaſs, who could not avoid taking notice, when he paſſed that way, of ſuch an extraordinary appearance.

About four or five leagues from Tauris, in a plain called Roomy; there are ſeveral ſprings of water that petrify wood, and, I have been informed, even reptiles, ſuch as lizards. One thing is certain, that, after a ſtagnation of this water, for a certain time, there is a ſubſtance like marble found at the bottom, which the Perſians cut into any breadth or length at pleaſure. I have ſeen of it two or three inches thick. It is eaſily poliſhed,

poliſhed, and is diaphanous, but not tranſparent. After ſawing it into ſlabs, they fix them for windows in their bagnios and private apartments. Perhaps, it is not improbable, the large pillars, formerly mentioned, might be hewn out of this kind of marble.

During our ſtay at Tauris, little material happened. The weather continued very cold, which, together with want of horſes and camels, detained us longer than we expected. I could not but pity the poor people of this place; the cold was ſo exceſſive, and bread, and other neceſſaries ſo dear, that, I was informed, many of them periſhed in the ſtreets.

January 2d, 1717, Monſieur Ricard, a French Jeſuit, arrived, in his way to Iſpahan, with ſome letters from Rome to the Sophy. He ſent Monſieur Duffus, one of his retinue, with his compliments to our ambaſſador.

The Chan being abſent, the Vizir, who is his lieutenant, came the 6th, in great ſtate,

ſtate, to viſit the ambaſſador; who, on the 11th, returned the compliment, attended with all his retinue. He was received in a magnificent hall, ſpread with fine carpets. There was a ſeat placed for the ambaſſador; but the reſt of the company ſat croſs-legged on the carpets, in the Perſian manner.

The 20th there was a great fall of ſnow, which very much ſoftened the cold piercing northerly winds.

The 23d, having, with great difficulty, procured horſes and camels, we left Tauris, and travelled two agatz through deep ſnow, which incommoded us not a little; particularly on account of the camels, who cannot bear deep roads.

The 24th and 25th, the roads were impaſſable. I ſaw here a male camel trample one of his keepers under his feet: For, at this ſeaſon, when the females are rutting, the males are very furious and ungovernable, and muſt be managed with great caution.

The

The 26th, we travelled two agatz, to a ſpacious well-built caravanſery, founded by Shach Sephy, ſufficient to contain ſome hundreds of men and horſes. Here we halted ſome time, and proceeded in the afternoon five agatz farther. In this day's journey you have the choice of two roads, both leading to Iſpahan; one through the cities of Ardeville and Caſbin, and the other by Zengan and Sultany; the laſt whereof we chooſed, being ſomewhat ſhorter.

Ardeville is reported to be a very fine place; and is famous for the monuments of Shach Sephy the firſt, and other Perſian princes and heroes, eſteemed for their virtue and piety. A great many devout people come from all parts of the country to worſhip at theſe tombs, where a conſiderable charity is daily diſtributed to the poor pilgrims; to ſupport which, there is a fund ſettled by the King, with proper officers appointed to ſuperintend the management of it, and prevent frauds. I wanted much

to

to viſit this place, but found it impracticable.

The 27th, we advanced three agatz, through deep ſnow, to a caravanſery built of bricks. We were at no loſs for water while the ſnow lay upon the ground. The next day we reached a large village, called Kara-China, inhabited by Perſians and Armenians. About a mile from the place we were met by an Armenian prieſt, attended by a company of country people, who came to welcome us as fellow Chriſtians. One of them carried a painted crucifix, raiſed on a long pole; others played on flutes and hautboys, and other muſical inſtruments, to which one or two perſons kept time, by beating two thin braſs plates againſt each other; and many of them ſung hymns and pſalms. In this manner they accompanied us to our lodgings, where we were better accommodated than we had been hitherto. We received from theſe people, in particular, very good wine and grapes, which they preſerve, through the winter by

by hanging them in dry and open places.

About this time many of our people had ſore eyes, and ſwelled faces, cauſed by the ſtrong reflection of the ſun-beams from the ſnow. The Perſians themſelves are liable to the ſame diſorders. As a remedy, they wear a fillet of net-work, made of black horſe hair, over their eyes, which I found, by experience, altogether effectual.

The 31ſt, we ſet out early, and travelled four agatz to Turkoma, a large village. The ſnow continued very deep. Here we were obliged to wait for our camels, ſome of which did not arrive till next day.

February 2d, we travelled eight agatz to a little town called Mianna, where is a caravanſery for horſes only. Here we buried another of our people.

The 4th, after two hours march, we paſſed a river, over which is a fine ſtone-bridge, ſtanding under an high mountain, called Kaplanton. Leaving that place, we ſaw, on the left hand, the ruins of an old

fortification. We repaſſed the river on another ſtone-bridge; thence to a caravanſery, called Tzamatura, and at night reached another, called Sartzam, being eight agatz from Mianna. Here we halted till our camels arrived; the greateſt part whereof came not before next day. We perceived the depth of the ſnow to leſſen daily, as we advanced to the ſouth.

The 7th, we travelled five agatz to a ſmall town named Zengan, where we lodged in a good caravanſery. The Sultan, or chief magiſtrate, waited on us, and gave us a friendly and hoſpitable reception. He has under his juriſdiction both this place and Sultany; at each he reſides half the year by turns.

Here we met a Ruſſian merchant, who had about fifteen or twenty camels loaden with various kinds of merchandiſe, going to Bucharia.

We halted two days, on account of the deep ſnow in this neighbourhood; and the 10th, after travelling ſix agatz, came to Sultany.

Sultany. This place is at preſent ſmall and inconſiderable, though it appears to have been a great and famous city in former times. There are ſtill to be ſeen ſeveral ſtately moſques and minorets; one of theſe moſques is the tomb of a Perſian prince, called Chudabendie, which has a braſs gate of lattice work, ſeemingly of great antiquity. In the ſame moſque is the tomb of Sultan Bajazat, ſon to Chudabendie.

On the 12th, we travelled four agatz to a village, where we ſtaid all night; and the 13th, three agatz to another, through deep ſnow, which prevented our proceeding next day.

The 15th, we travelled five agatz, and the 16th four, to a large village called Guiga Zayn. At this place a Ruſſian youth applied to the ambaſſador for freedom and protection. He had been carried away by the Tartars, from ſome of the ſouthern provinces of Ruſſia, and was ſold ſome years before in Perſia. He was forced

ced to turn Mahometan; had almoſt forgot his mother tongue; and was obliged to explain himſelf by an interpreter. The ambaſſador afforded him the protection he ſought. His maſter claimed either his ſlave or the money he had paid for him; neither of which demands could be granted.

The 18th, we arrived at Sexabbatt, a village four agatz from the former, where we quartered that night, and reſted all the next day.

The 20th, we advanced three agatz to Arazant, a ſmall village. This diſtrict being much peſtered with ſtrong gangs of highway-men, we marched with great circumſpection; and in the night the baggage was guarded, both by our own people and the conductor's ſoldiers.

The 21ſt, after a journey of three hours, we came to an old caravanſery, called Idjoop, where we reſted; then advanced four agatz to another, called Kockera, ſituated in an extenſive plain. The ſnow was now altogether gone, and the water at this place very

very bad. In an upper room of this caravanſery, I ſaw the names of many Europeans cut on the wall, in different languages: among which was that of Olearius, ſecretary to the Holſtein ambaſſadors, who publiſhed a very exact account of that fruitleſs embaſſy.

The 22d of February we ſet out very early, and in three hours reached Denggie, a caravanſery, where we halted for refreſhment; and at night arrived at Saba, or Sava, ſeven agatz from Kockera.

Saba appears, from many ruins, to have been a place of great note. It ſtands in a fruitful and extenſive plain, which produces all ſorts of fruit natural to the climate, particularly pomegranates, the largeſt I have ſeen. The trees were now in full bloom, and had a very fine appearance. Some years ago, this place was almoſt ruined by a deluge. It has been repairing ever ſince, but is ſtill far from its former condition.

The 24th, our road lay through a deſert and barren plain, abounding with ſaltpetre.

We

We travelled ſix agatz to Jeffrabatt, a new caravanſery; and the 25th, five agatz, to the town of Koom.

About two leagues from Koom we ſaw a round hill to the left, called in Turkiſh Gedeen-Gedmaze, which ſignifies, that, whoever goes up never returns; which, the Perſians ſay, was the fate of a page ſent up by Shach Abbaſs, with a lighted torch in his hand. However this be, it is certainly no eaſy matter to aſcend this place; becauſe the whole hill conſiſts of ſand, which is ſhifted from place to place by the wind, and muſt ſoon tire whoever attempts to climb it.

Koom is reckoned among the chief towns in Perſia, and is the reſidence of a chan. It is ſituated in a fertile plain, well watered by a pretty large river, over which is a fine ſtone-bridge. In the town is a ſpacious caravanſery, and ſeveral well built moſques and minorets. One of theſe moſques is highly eſteemed by the Perſians, becauſe of the ſepulchre of Shach Sephy and

and his ſon Shach Abbaſs the Second, and that of Sidy Fathima, grand-daughter to their prophet Mahomet. Theſe tombs are much frequented by pilgrims, from all parts of Perſia, who reſort hither once a year, to pay their devotions; and are ſupported by a fund appropriated to that purpoſe.

Before you reach the moſque, you paſs through three neat courts; and, in the middle of the fourth, where the moſque ſtands, there is a large baſon of clear water. Above the gate are engraven, in gilt letters, the names of the deceaſed princes, with ſome verſes in their praiſe. The monument of Sidy Fathima ſtands in the front of the building, encompaſſed with a grate work of pure ſilver, very valuable. To each of the princes are conſecrated magnificent apartments, where the prieſts read the Koran night and day.

This is alſo a place of refuge for debtors, and unfortunate people, who are maintained at the public expence. Adjoining to the moſque is a large hall, where alms

are

are daily diſtributed to the poor. Few Chriſtians are admitted into this ſacred place. The ambaſſador, however, with a few of the retinue, obtained this favour. Koom is famous for manufacturing the beſt blades, in all Perſia, for ſabres and poinards.

The 27th, we travelled from Koom, five agatz to Kaſſim-abbat, a conſiderable village, where we lodged. The weather now began to be ſo hot, that we could travel only in the morning and evening.

On the 28th, after travelling ſix agatz, we came to Sinnbzyn, another village. Here our huntſman caught a porcupine, and brought it home alive.

March 1ſt, we arrived at a place called Kaſhan, ſix agatz from the former. At ſome diſtance, we were met by the doroga, or judge, attended by about fifty horſemen. He came to ſalute the ambaſſador, and conducted him to his lodgings. The houſe belonged to the Shach, and was pleaſantly ſituated in the middle of a fine garden, planted with various kinds of fruit trees.

Kaſhan

Kaſhan is a large and populous city. It is ſituated in a fertile plain, which ſecures plenty of all neceſſaries, and contains ſeveral well built moſques and caravanſeries. The market-place is well furniſhed with merchandiſe of different kinds. The common manufactures of Perſia are found here, viz. ſilk and cotton ſtuffs, carpets, beſides ſome other articles, which make this a place of conſiderable trade.

This city is much peſtered with ſcorpions, eſpecially the black kind, reckoned the moſt venemous. Their ſting proves mortal in a few days, nay, even hours, if proper remedies be not applied. The cure uſed by the Perſians is, to anoint the wound with the oil of theſe animals, extracted by frying. Of this oil they have generally a quantity in reſerve. If it is wanting, they bruiſe any ſcorpion, and apply it to the part affected. Either of theſe remedies, taken in due time, ſeldom fail of ſucceſs. The Perſians have ſuch a dread of theſe creatures, that, when provoked by a-

ny perſon, they wiſh a Kaſhan ſcorpion may ſting him. They are the more terrible, as few houſes are free from them; for moſt of the floors being of earth, and covered with carpets or mats, below theſe the ſcorpions find or make holes for themſelves, where they lurk unſeen. They do not, indeed, often hurt, unleſs touched ſuddenly. It is adviſeable for all travellers to examine diligently the place where they are to ſleep, before they go to bed. As the ſcorpion is well known, it will be unneceſſary to ſay any more of it.

The 5th, we reached Buzabbatt, five agatz from Kaſhan. The weather was very hot. At this place I ſaw a creature called the ſtellio, or tarantula, and by the Perſians inkureck. It is in ſhape and ſize ſomewhat like a large ſpider, but overgrown with hair. I was informed that it neither ſtings nor bites, but drops its venom upon the ſkin, which is of ſuch a nature that it immediately penetrates into the body, and cauſes

cauſes dreadful ſymptoms; ſuch as giddineſs of the head, a violent pain in the ſtomach, and a lethargic ſtupifaction. The remedy, as in the former caſe, is the application of the ſame animal, when bruiſed, to the part, by which the poiſon is extracted. They alſo make the patient drink abundance of ſweet milk, after which he is put in a kind of tray, ſuſpended by ropes fixed in the four corners; it is turned round till the ropes are twiſted hard together; and, when let go at once, the untwining cauſes the baſket to run round, with a quick motion, which forces the patient to vomit.

They alſo make them dance to muſical inſtruments, which the ſick perſon ſometimes does, of his own accord, till he drops down upon the ſpot. One of theſe terrible creatures happened to fall out of the cieling upon my hand, as I was going one night to bed; I ſhook it off inſtantaneouſly, without receiving the leaſt harm. Every thing near was moved, and ſearched for it, but to no purpoſe, there being many holes

holes in the floor. It may eaſily be imagined that apprehenſion would prevent my ſleeping much that night.

The 6th, we travelled five or ſix agatz to Kaltabbatt; and the next day five, to Nattanee, a ſmall town ſituated under ſome high mountains. Here the Shach has a pretty little palace, with gardens, fountains of fine water, and caſcades. We lodged in the palace. The jackals were ſo bold, that they howled under the windows all the night long, and carried off ſome of our poultry. On the top of a mountain, near this place, ſtands a high tower, built by Shach Abbaſs, which is ſeen at a great diſtance.

The 8th, we left Nattanee, and in three hours paſſed a fine houſe, with gardens, built by Shach Abbaſs, and ſituated by itſelf in a pleaſant plain. About three hours after, we came to Tutrin, an old caravanſery, where we lodged. The heat increaſed daily as we advanced to the ſouth. The 9th, we reached Ruck, eight agatz diſtant from

from Tutrin, and four hours journey from the city of Iſpahan.

The 10th, being the vernal equinox, when the new year commences among the Perſians, we halted all day. In the evening, thirty fine horſes, with rich furniture, were ſent from the Shach's ſtables to the ambaſſador. Some of the bridles were ornamented with gold, others with ſilver. Two lions were brought by a Perſian to be ſhown to the ambaſſador. They were led into a court-yard, and let looſe upon a goat; but, inſtead of the goat, they ran at ſome of our people, who narrowly eſcaped, by getting into a houſe, and ſhutting the doors. It ſeems the ſight of ſo many ſtrangers had frightened them; for the keeper himſelf with difficulty chained them, and one of them even bit his hand.

The 11th, we advanced two agatz, to Davilett-abbatt, a village.

On the morning of the 13th, the Maymander Baſha, or chief conductor, arrived with

with many attendants. In the evening we mounted, and, being accompanied with a numerous train of courtiers, and other people, we travelled two agatz to the ſuburbs of the city, where we lodged in a palace called Tuchtzy, belonging to the Shach.

The 14th, in the morning, came a number of horſes ſufficient for the ambaſſador and all his train; this being the day appointed for our public entry.

About noon, the Maymander Baſha returned, to conduct the ambaſſador to his lodgings in the city. He was attended by many perſons of diſtinction.

After noon, we mounted, and entered the city. We paſſed through many ſtreets crowded with ſpectators, as were alſo the tops of the houſes. It was ſaid that the Sophy himſelf was at a window, *incognito*, with ſome of his ladies. Curioſity had cauſed ſuch a crowd, that, had not the way been cleared by the Perſian guards, it would have been impoſſible for us to paſs along.

along. At laſt, we reached the end of our journey; a noble palace, in the middle of the city, with a garden, three courts, and apartments ſufficient for the ambaſſador and all his retinue.

*The Order of the Entry.*

An officer.
Three dragoons.
A kettle-drum.
Four trumpets.
Thirty dragoons, three a-breaſt, with drawn Swords.
Six ſpare horſes, with ſumptuous trappings.
The ſteward.
Twelve footmen.
Two pages.
Three footmen.
Two interpreters.
Two hey-dukes in Hungarian habits.

The

The ambaſſador, with the maymander,
Baſha, and interpreter.
The prieſt and one gentleman.
Myſelf and one gentleman.
Two clerks.
Faulconers, huntſmen, &c.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Occurrences during our Stay at Iſpahan.*

THE 15th, the agents of the Engliſh and Dutch factories, viz. Mr Coppin the Engliſh agent, ſent Meſſieurs Batſon and Reynardſon, the Dutch agent likewiſe ſent two gentlemen of their company, to ſalute the ambaſſador.

The 16th, the Maymander Baſha invited the ambaſſador to an audience of the Etmadowlett, or prime miniſter, which he would not comply with, till he had an audience of the Shach, and delivered his credentials, though it is uſual firſt to take an audience

of that miniſter. This day I viſited the Engliſh factory, where I met with a friendly reception.

On the 27th was a great fall of rain, ſuch as had not been at Iſpahan for ſeven years: It was the cauſe of great joy in this ſultry dry climate, though to me it ſeemed nothing extraordinary.

April 1ſt, I went to Julffa to ſee a friend, accompanied by Mr Batſon. It is a large place in the ſuburbs, inhabited by Armenians, who have the free exerciſe of the Chriſtian religion. On the 10th, I dined at the Dutch houſe, the weather very hot.

May 4th, the ceremonial part of the ambaſſador's introduction to the Shach being previouſly agreed on, he was this day to have his firſt audience. In the morning horſes were ſent from the King's ſtables, all of them magnificently equipped, with grooms to attend them; many of the ſaddles and bridles were garniſhed with gold and ſilver.

We

We marched in the ſame order as at our entry above mentioned, only the dragoons had not their ſwords drawn. After paſſing through ſeveral ſtreets, we came to the great market place, called Bazar, and then to a gate called Alla-capy, i. e. God's-gate, where we diſmounted. Acroſs this gate is hung a chain, and none are permitted to enter on horſeback except the Shach himſelf. We walked through the guards, drawn up on each ſide, to an inner court, and thence to an arched gate, ſurrounded with benches, and ſpread with carpets. Here the ambaſſador was deſired to ſit down till the Shach was ready to receive him. We waited at leaſt two hours, during which time, all the miniſters of ſtate, and officers of the houſehold, paſſed us in great ſtate; after them came a large elephant, mounted by his keeper, and adorned with gold and ſilver ſtuff; then two large lions, led by their keepers with chains of maſſy gold.

When

and falls into a baſon filled with roſes, jeſſamine, and many other fine flowers.

When we came to the ſtair, we were deſired to put off our ſlippers, and our ſervants were no further admitted. The ambaſſador only and ſix of his retinue (among whom I was) entered the hall. We aſcended by eight ſteps of marble, the whole breadth of the hall. From the roof hung a canvaſs, which was ſtretched out over the ſtair, and ſhaded the whole inſide of the edifice. The hall is a ſpacious ſquare building, with a terrace roof; the cieling is very magnificent, being all arched, and ſet with mirrors of different magnitudes till within three feet of the floor, which is quite covered with ſilk carpets, interwoven with branches and foliage of gold and ſilver. In the middle were two baſons, into which ſeveral pipes, each about eight feet high, ſpouted water, which, falling upon roſes and other flowers, has a fine effect on a hot day. The farther end of the hall is a ſemicircle; here ſat the Shach upon a ſofa,

ſofa, raiſed about a foot from the floor, which was elevated four ſteps above the reſt of the hall: He was attended by twenty eunuchs; one carried his ſabre, another his bow; a third the quiver with arrows, a fourth the calianne, or tobacco-pipe; ſo that each had his office of ſtate.

The ambaſſador was received in the hall by the maſter of the ceremonies, called Iſh-aggan Baſha, to be by him introduced to the Shach. He continued ſitting upon his ſofa, with his legs acroſs, while all his miniſters of ſtate ſtood in their places, cloth-ed magnificently in their robes; which they never wear except on ſolemn days; and, when theſe are over, they leave them in a wardrobe at court, appointed for keeping them. I muſt confeſs the appearance was very ſplendid, and put me in mind of the accounts left us by the ancients, of the magnificence of the Kings of Perſia.

At our entry into the hall, we were ſtopped about three minutes at the firſt fountain, in order to raiſe the greater reſpect; the

the pipes were contrived to play ſo high, that the water fell into the baſon like a thick rain; nothing could be diſcovered for ſome time, and the Shach himſelf appeared as in a fog. While we moved forward, every thing was as ſtill as death; the maſter of the ceremonies took the ambaſſador by the arm, and conducted him within ſix yards of the throne, who offering to advance, in order to deliver his credentials, was prevented by the Etmadowlett, or prime miniſter; this miniſter received the credentials, and laid them before the Shach, who touched them with his hand, as a mark of reſpect. This part of the ceremony had been very difficult to adjuſt; for the ambaſſador inſiſted on delivering his letters into the Shach's own hands; the Perſian miniſters, on the other hand, affirmed, that their Kings never received letters directly from the ambaſſadors of the greateſt Emperors on earth.

The ambaſſador now made a ſhort ſpeech, which the Sophy anſwered, through the Etma-

Etmadowlett, in very obliging terms. He then inquired after his Czariſh Majeſty's health, and aſked ſeveral queſtions about the Swediſh war, and whether the ambaſſador had ſuffered any hardſhips on the road during ſo long a journey? To all which he returned anſwers ſuitable to the occaſion. At laſt he was deſired to take his ſeat, to which he was led by the maſter of the ceremonies: It was about a foot high, and placed at the diſtance of ten yards from the King. A little behind the ambaſſador were placed his attendants, on ſeats nearly of the ſame height. During all this ceremony, muſic played, conſiſting of a variety of inſtruments, which are not unharmonious, and the mufti, or high prieſt, read, without intermiſſion, chapters of the Koran.

Before the ambaſſador was ſeated, the preſents from his Czariſh Majeſty to the Sophy, carried by fifty men, were brought to the entry, and received by the proper officers: They conſiſted of ſables, and other valuable furs, falcons, a variety of fine tea,

muſical clocks, gold watches ſet in diamonds, &c.

As ſoon as the ambaſſador had taken his ſeat, all the miniſters of ſtate ſat down on their hams, on both ſides of the hall, in rows; for none are allowed to ſit croſs legged in preſence of the Sophy.

There was now placed before the company little tables, on which were ſet all kinds of ſweat-meats and confections; and before the ambaſſador was laid a golden caſianne, or tobacco-pipe, which the Perſians reckon an high inſtance of reſpect.

The muſic continued playing, and the mufti ſtill continued reading; but every thing elſe was very ſilent. Several meſſages paſſed between the King and the ambaſſador, by means of the maſter of the ceremonies, and our interpreter. The King ſpoke the Perſian language, and the ambaſſador the Ruſſian, while the other two uſed the Turkiſh.

In the mean time, ſome pure water, with a bit of ice in it, was brought in golden baſons

ſons to drink. About an hour after, victuals were brought by a number of ſervants, who carried them on their heads, in large ſquare baſkets. Firſt the Shach was ſerved, and next the ambaſſador with his retinue; then all the officers of ſtate that ſat in the hall. The grand ſteward of the houſehold waited on the King, and his aſſiſtants on the reſt of the company, according to their different ranks. At the ſame time our ſervants were entertained in the garden.

The entertainment conſiſted moſtly of different kinds of rice boiled with butter, fowls, mutton, boiled and roaſted lamb. The whole was ſerved in large gold or china diſhes, and placed in the baſkets, which ſtood on a long cloth ſpread above the carpet. The diſhes were interſperſed with ſaucers filled with aromatic herbs, ſugar, and vinegar. But, according to the cuſtom of the country, we had neither napkins, ſpoons, knives, nor forks; for the Shach himſelf eat with his fingers, and

every

every one followed his example. There were indeed, beſides the common bread, ſome very large thin cakes, which we uſed inſtead of napkins, to wipe our fingers. They are made of wheat-flour; the Perſians ſometimes eat them; they are not diſagreeable. Our drink was ſherbet, and water cooled with ice. Formerly it was uſual, on ſuch occaſions, to drink wine, and have women to dance and ſing. But the preſent Sophy, being a ſober and devout prince, thought it proper to aboliſh a cuſtom productive of ſo many indecencies, and directly contrary to the rules of the Koran. We had therefore only men to ſing, and no dancing.

The ambaſſador, and all the gentlemen who were admitted into the hall, continued with their heads covered during all the time of the audience. They only, on entering the royal preſence, uncovered once, and bowed to his majeſty.

When the entertainment was over, the ambaſſador took his leave, and returned to his

his lodgings, conducted by the Maymander Baſha, in the ſame manner as in the morning. The ſtreets were lined with the Sophy's guards to prevent any inconvenience from the vaſt crowds of people.

The ſame evening the Shach ſent a preſent to the ambaſſador of the golden calianne he had uſed at court; it was neatly wrought in filigree, and valued at forty or fifty pounds Sterling; alſo twenty large diſhes of ſolid gold, filled with variety of ſweet-meats. Thoſe who brought them returned immediately, leaving the plate; which remained at the ambaſſador's lodgings above ſix weeks. All this time it was uncertain whether ſuch a valuable treaſure was forgot, or intended as a preſent. The diſhes however were at laſt demanded, and delivered. They weighed about thirty pounds a-piece, but were of mean workmanſhip, being all beat out with a hammer. From this, and many ſimilar inſtances, ſome conception may be formed of the immenſe

immenſe riches whereof the Sophy is poſſeſſed.

The Shach's name is Huſſein; he is about thirty years of age, of a middle ſtature, open countenance, and has a ſhort black beard. It is ſaid his legs are remarkably ſhort, in proportion to his body. He is very good natured, and of a beneficent diſpoſition. He has ſeveral children by different ladies. Tachmaz the eldeſt, at preſent in his minority, ſeldom appears out of the Haram. Huſſein himſelf, though a prince adorned with many virtues, yet being educated in the Haram among the women, is little acquainted with the world, and leaves the management of the empire wholly to his miniſters: In them he places an entire confidence; and they, in their turn, perſuade him that it is below his dignity to attend to any public affairs what ever. At this very time there was a formidable rebellion begun at Chandahar, a ſtrong town on the borders of India, by Mery-Mahmut, an enterpriſing and powerful

erful chief, who took advantage of the weakneſs of the preſent adminiſtration.

The Perſian miniſtry neglected and deſpiſed theſe rebels, threatening, in their ſtile, to ſend ſome troops to cut them all to pieces. Time hath ſhown the vanity of theſe high words. I muſt obſerve that they wanted neither men nor money; but their ſoldiers were undiſciplined, and, above all, they had no officers of ſufficient abilities to command them.

The 9th of May, the ambaſſador had his firſt audience of the Etmadowlett. We were conducted in the ſame manner as when we went to court. The entertainment was likewiſe of the ſame kind, but much more magnificent. The palace was grand, and had a fine garden adjoining. The Etmadowlett, whoſe name is Phatalychan, was by birth a Georgian, of Chriſtian parents, but educated in the ſeraglio. He is a tall well-ſhaped man, of a friendly aſpect, and a great favourite of the Sophy. After we returned home, the Etmadowlett

ſent

ſent the ambaſſador a preſent of a fine horſe, with a ſaddle and bridle, richly mounted, after the Perſian faſhion, and a gold calianne, little inferior to that given by the Shach. It was reported that no foreign ambaſſador had ever been treated with ſo much reſpect.

The 11th, the ambaſſador had a ſecond audience of the Sophy, at the ſame palace as formerly, called Tavalea Telear, *i. e.* the palace near the ſtables; it was very ſhort, and no entertainment was given. Next day he received from the Shach a preſent of ſome excellent Sherras wine, and a gold bottle, that contained about two quarts, with a ſmall cup of the ſame metal.

On the 15th, the ambaſſador had a ſecond audience of the Etmadowlett, relating to the ſubject of the embaſſy.

Three days after, the Hackim Baſha, or chief phyſician, ſent me an invitation to viſit him. He received me in a very courteous obliging manner; and detained me above two hours, talking on different ſubjects.

jects. He told me, that the physicians in Persia made vegetables, and their virtues, their chief study; they dealt but little in minerals and chemical preparations. Then he asked me whether the European physicians admitted opium in their prescriptions? I told him they did with great success. To which he replied, that the qualities of that drug were known to very few. He inquired whence tea came? how it should be made? and what were its virtues? All which I answered to his satisfaction. Hence it is evident that the Persians have no correspondence nor commerce with the Chinese. The physician is an elderly man, of a grave deportment, and might pass for a doctor any where. On taking my leave, he told me he was sorry he could not converse with me but by means of an interpreter, which was tedious and disagreeable.

The same day the Dutch commissary, Myn-heer Vonkettler, made his public entry at Ispahan, as envoy from the gover-

nour of Batavia to the Shach of Perſia. He was preceded by ſix elephants, ſent as a preſent to the King by the governour. He had a numerous retinue, and was attended by ſeveral gentlemen, and made as grand an appearance as if he had been a miniſter from any court of Europe. He took up his lodgings at the Dutch factory. Mr Kettler told me, that he was born in Courland; that, in his youth, he inliſted as a ſoldier in the ſervice of the Dutch Eaſt-India company; by his uncommon abilities he had raiſed himſelf from that low ſituation to the honourable place he now held.

The following day Mr Kettler ſent two of his retinue to compliment our ambaſſador: And, both our gentlemen being indiſpoſed, I was ſent next day to return the compliment.

The 28th, I dined at the Dutch houſe, where we had a grand entertainment.

June 2d, the ambaſſador intended to go a hunting, and to take a view of the country

try about Iſpahan. But an officer came from court, deſiring him to delay it till another opportunity; for the Shach had pitched on that day to viſit a country-houſe, in company with his ladies; on which occaſions it is death for any one to be ſeen near the place where the court paſſes. To prevent accidental tranſgreſſions in this reſpect, a cryer is previouſly deſpatched to warn the inhabitants, who proclaims through the ſtreets, and along the road, that nobody, under pain of death, ſhall appear either in the way, or from any houſe near it, by which his majeſty and the ladies are to march. The Shach rides on horſeback, attended only by eunuchs. The ladies are mounted aſtride, ſome on horſes, others on mules and aſſes. They are all veiled with white muſlin, ſo that nothing can be ſeen of them but the eyes and noſe.

The Perſians tell a pleaſant ſtory of Shach Abbaſs's behaviour on an occaſion of this nature. The Shach at a certain time

time was riding along, attended by his concubines, when he happened to meet a poor country-fellow upon the road. He was immediately brought before the King, and, expecting inſtant death, fell on his knees, moſt ſubmiſſively begging pardon for ſo heinous an offence, and pleaded ignorance in his excuſe, having neither ſeen nor heard of any cryer. The prince was pleaſed with the ſimplicity and innocence of the peaſant, ordered him to take courage, and all the ladies to unveil; then deſired him to pick out any of his concubines he liked beſt, and he ſhould have her for a wife. This treatment diſpelled his fear; he pitched on one that pleaſed him moſt. The Shach approved ſo much of his taſte that he carried him to court, where he ſoon became a great favourite.

The 9th, I dined at the Engliſh factory, where Mr Coppin, and the other gentlemen belonging to the company, received me in the moſt friendly manner. The day was very hot, and in the evening we ſupped

ped near a fountain in the garden. On a ſudden we felt a guſt of wind, as hot as if it had come from the mouth of an oven. It was ſoon over without any bad effect. But I was informed that theſe hot winds are very dangerous, in travelling over the deſerts, and often kill people immediately. The only reſource, on perceiving them coming, is to fall down flat, with the face to the ground, and continue in that poſture till they are gone.

On the 12th, the ambaſſador had a third audience of the Shach at Farrabbatt, a country-houſe near the city. It is an extremely pleaſant place, adorned with gardens, fountains, and caſcades, ſurrounded with parks for all kinds of game. While we were at ſupper on the terrace, we had a ſqual of wind, which almoſt carried away every thing, and actually ſwept off the thin broad cakes, which the Perſians uſe inſtead of napkins.

The 16th, Monſieur Ricard, whom I mentioned at Tauris, and twelve miſſionaries

ries of different orders, were invited to dine with the ambaſſador. Several of theſe gentlemen had been long in India and Ethiopia, which rendered their converſation very entertaining.

The 21ſt, the ambaſſador was invited to dinner by the devettar, or keeper of the great ſeal and ſtandiſh. Here, as in all other countries, this is an office of great truſt. We were entertained with more magnificence than by the prime miniſter, or even at court. Soon after we entered, there were ſerved up a great variety of ſweet-meats, and all kinds of fruit that the climate afforded. Coffee and ſherbet were carried about by turns. We were placed croſs-legged on the carpets, except the ambaſſador, who had a ſeat. During this part of the feaſt we were entertained with vocal and inſtrumental muſic, dancing boys, tumblers, puppets, and juglers: All the performers executed their parts with great dexterity. Two of them counterfeiting a quarrel, one beat off the other's turban

turban with his foot, out of which dropped about fifteen or twenty large ſerpents, which run or crawled about the room. One of them came towards me, with great ſpeed, which ſoon obliged me to quit my place. On ſeeing us alarmed, they told us the creatures were altogether inoffenſive, as their teeth had been all drawn out. The fellow went about the room and gathered them again into his turban, like ſo many eels. The victuals were now ſerved in a neat and elegant manner. Every thing was well dreſſed in the Perſian faſhion. Our hoſt was very cheerful, and contributed every thing in his power to pleaſe his gueſts. He excuſed himſelf handſomely enough for not having wine, as it was not then uſed at court.

On the 23d, the Maymander Baſha brought a meſſage from the Shach to the ambaſſador, intimating, that the buſineſs of his embaſſy being now finiſhed, he might chooſe his own time to depart. This was not very agreeable news to the ambaſſador, who

who alledged, that, before he could procure ſhipping, to tranſport him to Aſtrachan, the ſeaſon would be far advanced, and oblige him to winter in ſome part of Perſia.

July 1ſt, the Shach ſent the ambaſſador, and the principal parts of his retinue, what the Perſians call the kalatt. It conſiſts of a tunic, a long rob of gold and ſilver ſtuff, a ſaſh and turban, and ſome pieces of Perſian ſilk, whereof about ten or a dozen fell to my ſhare. The whole value was not conſiderable; but the Shach beſtows this mark of favour to all foreign miniſters who come on friendly errands. On this occaſion he ſent the ambaſſador, in particular, a preſent of two fine horſes from his own ſtables.

The 3d, the ambaſſador had his laſt audience of the Shach, at a palace in the city; when he received an anſwer to the Czar's letter, and immediately took leave ſtanding, without further ceremony.

The

The 8th, the Shach ſent the ambaſſador another preſent, conſiſting of an elephant, two lions, two leopards, ſix monkeys of different kinds, three parrots, two white and one green, three fine horſes, and an Indian bird, called myana; it is in colour, ſhape, and ſize, like a black-bird, and whiſtled a very fine note.

Auguſt the 3d, we began to prepare for our journey homeward, which took up much time. The 18th, we removed from our lodgings in the city to a houſe belonging to the Shach, in the northern ſuburbs, called Tauchtzy.

The 26th, I took leave of my friend Mr Coppin, who ſet out this day on his journey to England, by way of Aleppo. The Engliſh factory at Iſpahan are very well ſituated in the middle of the city, have a ſpacious garden adjoining, and are ſeparated from the reſt of the town by a wall. Moſt of the great houſes in the city are ſurrounded in the ſame manner, which renders it very extenſive.

Iſpahan is ſituated nearly in thirty-two degrees north latitude, on a fruitful plain, in the province of Hierack, anciently the kingdom of the Parthians. About three or four Engliſh miles diſtant from the city, to the ſouth, runs an high ridge of mountains from eaſt to weſt. Shach Abbaſs the Great transferred the ſeat of the Perſian government from Caſbin to this place.

Iſpahan is plentifully ſupplied with water from the river Schenderoo, which runs between the city and the ſuburbs, keeping its courſe to the north. It riſes near the city, and is fordable almoſt every where, unleſs during great rains, which ſeldom happen. After paſſing this place, its courſe is but ſhort, for it ſoon loſes itſelf in dry parched plains. Over the Schenderoo there are three ſtately ſtone-bridges in ſight of one another; but the one in the middle, betwixt the city and that part of the ſuburbs called Julpha, which terminates the ſpacious ſtreet Tzar-bach, far exceeds any ſtructure

ſtructure of that kind I ever ſaw. It is broad enough for two carriages and a horſeman to paſs a-breaſt, and has galleries on each ſide, which are covered, for the convenience of people on foot; and watchmen are ſtationed at each end, to prevent diſorders. There are few houſes in the town which have not their chauſes, i. e. ciſterns of water, conveyed in pipes from the river: A moſt ſalutary and refreſhing circumſtance, in ſuch a dry and ſultry climate.

The city is populous, and, as I already obſerved, very extenſive. As moſt of the inhabitants have their houſes apart, ſurrounded with gardens, planted with fruit and other trees, at a diſtance it appears like a city in a foreſt, and affords a very agreeable proſpect.

The ſtreets are generally very narrow and irregular, except that leading to the great bridge, already mentioned. This noble ſtreet is very broad and ſtraight, and near an Engliſh mile in length. On each

ſide

ſide are the King's palaces, courts of juſtice, and the academies for the education of youth, with two rows of tall chinar trees, which afford a fine ſhade. Theſe trees have a ſmooth whitiſh bark, and a broad leaf, like the plane-tree. At certain diſtances, there are fountains of water that play continually, round which are ſpread carpets; and thither the Perſians reſort to drink coffee, ſmoke tobacco, and hear news; which, I muſt confeſs, is very agreeable in hot weather.

About half a mile below the city is a fine plain upon the banks of the river, where the Perſians, every evening, exerciſe their horſes in riding, and accuſtom them to the diſcharge of fire-arms. They alſo ſhoot at butts with bows and arrows, and throw blunted darts at one another; at which they appear very dextrous.

The city is almoſt quite defenceleſs, having only a ſlight wall round it, built of mud dried by the ſun, which is broken down in many places; ſo that, if the army is defeated

feated in the field, Iſpahan cannot defend itſelf one day; for even all the artillery I ſaw, conſiſted of about twenty braſs cannon, which ſtood in the grand court before the palace-gate, and were more for parade than real uſe.

The houſes here, as in other places of Perſia, are generally built with bricks hardened by the ſun. The roofs are flat, and covered with a terrace. They make but a mean appearance from the ſtreet, though within they are neat and clean, and very convenient for the Perſian manner of life. The Shach's palaces, the public edifices, and the houſes of all perſons of diſtinction, are built with ſtone.

As the ſtreets are not paved, when it is windy, the city is ſometimes involved in ſuch a cloud of duſt, that the ſun is ſcarcely viſible. This obliges the inhabitants to water the ſtreets at leaſt every evening. Theſe guſts of wind are very diſagreeable; but they happen ſeldom, and are of ſhort duration.

At

At Iſpahan are many manufactories of ſilk and cotton, and a great many ſilk worms in the neighbourhood. As the conſumption of ſilk is very conſiderable at this place, little of it is exported. The making carpets, however, employs the greateſt number of hands; for which the demand is great, as they are preferable in quality, deſign, and colour, to any made elſewhere.

The fields about the city are very fertile, and produce plentiful crops of excellent wheat and barley; but then they muſt all be watered, on account of the dryneſs of the ſoil, which is a work of labour and expence. Beſides theſe, I ſaw no other grain.

The Perſians tread out their corn with oxen or aſſes. For this purpoſe, they make a circle, about twenty or thirty feet in diameter, on the circumference whereof the ſheaves are laid. There is a light ſledge or hurdle drawn by the cattle, in which the driver ſits, and directs them round and round, as often as is neceſſary; and new

ſheaves

ſheaves are always added when the former ones are trodden ſufficiently. This operation alſo ſoftens the ſtraw, and renders it very good provender. There is no hay in Perſia; and the beſt horſes are kept in a condition for any ſervice by this food, and a ſmall quantity of dried barley twice a day.

They have flocks of large ſheep, whereof the mutton is very good, but the wool coarſe. In the province of Karamenia, indeed, they have exceeding fine wool, ſome of which I have ſeen little inferior to ſilk. Their horned cattle are buffalos, which afford them milk, and are uſed in plowing the ground, and drawing carriages. They have alſo the common kind of cattle of different ſizes. The better ſort of people eat chiefly mutton and fowls, but very little beef.

Beſides the cattle I have mentioned, there is another kind, having a high riſing upon the ſhoulder, with clean limbs, which are very handſome.

As

As I have formerly obſerved, that the Perſians make uſe of ice to cool their water in ſummer, it may be aſked, where are got ſuch quantities, in ſo hot a climate, as are daily ſold in the ſtreets for that purpoſe? I was informed, that there were people who made it their buſineſs to watch the froſty nights, in the winter ſeaſon; on which occaſions they went to the mountains near the city, and threw water on certain places, which being frozen, they continued to repeat the operation till the ice was of convenient thickneſs; then they cut it in pieces, and carry it into caves, hewn in the rocks, where it is preſerved during the ſummer. What they cannot carry off before the ſun riſes is covered, to defend it from his heat.

While I remained at Iſpahan, I viſited the Shach's aviary. It contains a great variety of all kinds of birds, many of which had come from India, and other foreign parts. Among the reſt were a couple of turkeys, which it ſeems are rare birds in Perſia.

Perſia. The place is very neat and elegant. The aviary is about fifteen feet high, and covered with a net-work of braſs-wire, to prevent the birds flying away.

Proviſions of all kinds are very dear at Iſpahan, which is ſufficiently apparent from the number of poor that go about the ſtreets. Nothing, however, is ſo extravagantly high as fire-wood.

The Roman catholics have three convents in the city, viz. thoſe of the Carmelites, Capuchins, and Auguſtins. The Jeſuits and Dominicans have their ſeparate convents in the ſuburbs of Julpha, which is inhabited by Armenians, who are allowed the free exerciſe of their religion.

There is a conſiderable number of Jews in the city, who are either merchants or mechanics.

In the neighbourhood of the city is a tribe of people, called by the Perſians Giaur, who worſhip fire, being the poſterity of the ancient inhabitants of this coun-

try, who paid divine honours to that element. They are a poor indolent race, and live in naſty huts, or in tents. They ſpeak a different language from the Perſians; have black hair, and are of a ſwarthy complection. They have ſome ſheep and cattle; but many of them go about the ſtreets begging.

About three or four miles to the ſouthward of the city, are to be ſeen the ruins of a tower on the top of a mountain, where it is ſaid Darius ſat when Alexander the Great fought the ſecond battle with the Perſians. I was alſo told, that, about two days journey from Iſpahan, are diſtinguiſhable the remains of the tomb of Queen Eſther, a lady celebrated in holy writ for many virtues. Theſe, and many other places, I intended to have examined on the ſpot, but was unluckily prevented, for want of time.

While we lay at Tauchtzy, waiting for horſes and camels, two of our ſervants were ſtung with ſcorpions; but were ſoon cured,

cured, by timely application of the oil of ſcorpions, prepared after the Perſian manner, without any other remedy. The jackals made a diſmal howling under our windows every night.

I have now finiſhed my obſervations on whatever ſeemed moſt remarkable in and about the city of Iſpahan. I ſhall only add, that, among the many lofty and pompous titles which this mighty monarch aſſumes, there are ſome very extraordinary; of which I ſhall mention one, 'That the 'greateſt kings of the earth may think it 'an honour to drink out of his horſes 'footſteps.' Several more inſtances might be given, in the Oriental ſtile, fully as extravagant.

*The Shach's Palaces.*

1. Tzel Sootun, or that of forty pillars.
2. Tevela Telear, near the ſtables.

3. Haſta-

3. Haſta-Behaſi, chambers of paradiſe.
4. Othiat Tallard, near the Haram.
5. Guldeſta, houſe of eunuchs.
6. Tauchtzy, at the north entry.
7. Farrabbatt, ſouth-eaſt from the city.

Perſia is at preſent divided into ſixteen provinces, many of them of great extent. I ſhall mention their preſent names, and, under them, thoſe they ſeem to have borne among the ancients.

1. Turkomania,
   Great Armenia.
2. Diarbeck.
   Meſopatamia.
3. Kurdiſtan,
   Part of Aſſyria.
4. Hierack Arabee,
   Chaldea, or Babylon.
5. Hierack Aggemy,
   Region of the Parthians.

6. Shirvan,

6. Shirvan,
   Towards the north-weſt coaſt of the Caſpian Sea.
7. Guilan and Meſanderan,
   Hyrcania.
8. Aſtrabatt,
   Margiana.
9. Uſbeck,
   Bactria.
10. Koraſſan,
    Aria.
11. Sableſtan,
    Parapomiſia.
12. Sigiſtan,
    Drangiana.
13. Arachoſia.
14. Machran.
15. Karamenia,
    Reaching to the gulph of Ormus.
16. Pharſiſtan,
    Old Perſia, whereof Perſepolis was the capital city.

I have added the ancient names according to the beſt information I could procure; for, under the various revolutions of this country, the records have been almoſt wholly either loſt or deſtroyed: So that the Perſians themſelves know very little of the ancient hiſtory of their country.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VII.

### *From Iſpahan to Shamachy; occurrences during our ſtay there.*

SEPTEMBER 1ſt, having procured horſes and camels, and every thing neceſſary, and having alſo got a conductor from the Shach, we this day left Iſpahan in order to return to Ruſſia. We travelled ſhort ſtages along the ſame road by which we came to Iſpahan. Little material happened for a conſiderable time, and I ſhall not repeat what I formerly obſerved; I ſhall only take notice, that many of the places through which we paſſed were much infeſted by ſtrong gangs of highway-men.

We

We were therefore obliged to travel very cautiouſly, and to keep our people together near the baggage, but particularly to procure a ſafe caravanſery for our lodgings. The weather continuing very hot, was the reaſon of our making eaſy marches; and theſe chiefly in the mornings and evenings, and ſometimes in the night, when it could be done with ſafety.

We travelled in this manner till the 26th of September, when we arrived at a village called Arrazant, where we lodged. Next day, inſtead of purſuing the ſame route by Tauris, we turned to the right, and took the road leading to Caſbin and Guilan.

The 27th, we proceeded five agatz to Membereck; and the 28th four, to the city of Caſbin. This place is ſituated in a ſpacious plain, having a ridge of high mountains to the north. I mentioned formerly, that Caſbin was once the ſeat of government, and the reſidence of the Perſian monarchs. There are ſtill to be ſeen the ruins of many ſtately moſques, palaces,

and

and other public edifices. The city appears to have been, in former times, very large and flouriſhing, but is now much contracted and decayed.

The plague raged here all the preceding ſummer, which had almoſt depopulated the place: And, although the fury of that contagious diſtemper was much abated, people continued to die daily, which made us reſolved to remain no longer than was abſolutely neceſſary, in order to prepare things for our journey to Guilan. This could not be ſoon accompliſhed at a time of ſuch public calamity.

In the mean time, many of our people were ſeized with peſtilential fevers, who all recovered but one. He died ſuddenly, with the uſual ſymptoms of the plague. I and ſeveral of our people were likewiſe taken with fevers, occaſioned by our being lodged in houſes where the Perſians had lately died. Theſe circumſtances made the ambaſſador reſolve to leave the place at all events. During the time therefore

which we were obliged to wait for horſes and camels, we removed out of town about a mile, to a garden belonging to the Shach, provided for us by the commandant of the city and province. Here we ſet up our tents; and in this ſituation, by the help of free air and good water, our people recovered ſurpriſingly; ſo that, in a ſhort time, moſt of them were able to ride, another gentleman only and myſelf were carried in litters between two mules.

The 12th of October we ſet out again, purſuing our journey northward. After travelling about two leagues through a plain, we aſcended an high and ſteep mountain, and, proceeding onward about a league, came to a ſmall village where we lodged. All the inhabitants had forſaken their houſes. Whatever elſe was wanting, we had here the comfort of pure air, which had ſuch an effect on me, that next day I was able to mount on horſeback, though, at ſetting out, I was ſcarcely in condition

condition to bear the eaſy motion of the litter.

We continued our journey, aſcending and deſcending many ſteep rocks and mountains for four days, when we arrived at Menzyly, a little town ſituated in a charming valley; where grow abundance of citrons, oranges, olives, beſide grapes and other fruits. Theſe I own were tempting objects; but ſad experience taught many of us to value them no more than ſloes or bramble berries. Menzyly is governed by a kalentar or judge; it is a pretty romantic place, encompaſſed by high mountains on all ſides, which decline to the north, and are covered with graſs. This is a rare ſight in Perſia, and is cauſed by the great autumnal rains; for along the ſouth coaſt of the Caſpian Sea, it rains at this ſeaſon, almoſt without intermiſſion, for the ſpace of ſix weeks or two months. In this and the neighbouring villages are bred a great number of ſilk-worms, which produce the beſt and greateſt quantities of raw ſilk made

made in the province of Guilan; from whence it is exported by the Armenian merchants, partly through Ruſſia to Holland, and partly by land to Aleppo, for the Levant trade.

Having ſtaid two days at Menzyly, we ſet out again in heavy rains, through deep roads, which greatly incommoded our camels; for they often ſlipped, and ſometimes fell down under their burthens: However, in five days we reached Reſhd, the capital of the province of Guilan.

Reſhd ſtands in a plain, ſurrounded with great woods on every ſide, about a day's journey from the neareſt ſhore of the Caſpian Sea, where is a very good harbour for ſhips of ſmall burthen.

The houſes are thinly ſcattered, reſembling rather a large village than a town. As the ground at this place is very flat, the inhabitants are obliged to chuſe the dryeſt places to build on. In the market place, I ſaw about eight pieces of cannon, mounted on ſorry carriages; among which was a neat

neat braſs field-piece, with the name of that noted Prince the Duke of Holſtein Gottorp upon it: It ſeems to have been left here accidentally by the ambaſſadors of that Duke to the then Shach of Perſia.

The houſes are mean, in compariſon with thoſe in other parts of Perſia; the roofs are raiſed and tiled, to carry off the great falls of rain.

The marſhes and pools, with which Reſhd is ſurrounded, renders it very unhealthy, eſpecially in the heat of ſummer, when it is often viſited with the peſtilence; and, although it is a place of the greateſt plenty, the inhabitants look as half ſtarved. I was told they were obliged to confine themſelves to a ſcanty diet; that, if they allowed themſelves the leaſt indulgence, even ſo far as to eat their rice with butter, they were liable to agues, the reigning diſtemper in this climate. Many of our people were actually ſeized with theſe agues, though none of them proved mortal. Here, as at the capitals of the other

ther provinces, we were obliged to remain a conſiderable time, much longer than we inclined: For every province bears the expence of ambaſſadors, from the time they arrive at its capital, till they reach the capital of the next province, where freſh ſupplies of money and cattle are to be procured. The obtaining theſe things, and the rainy weather, detained us in this diſagreeable place. The pools are full of frogs that chatter like magpies, and make ſuch a loud croaking, beſides their chattering, that a perſon cannot ſleep till he is accuſtomed to that noiſe.

The country above Reſhd is very fruitful, particularly in rice, which grows plentifully on the marſhy grounds, and is ſufficient to ſupply moſt of the other provinces of Perſia; there is alſo plenty of fruit natural to the climate. The Armenians, who inhabit Reſhd, make good wine, both red and white; and even in the woods you may ſee the vines, loaden with cluſters of grapes, twiſting about the trees, which are left

left to the birds, as they are not worth gathering amid ſuch plenty.

Great flocks of fieldfares, thruſhes, blackbirds, with vaſt quantities of ſtorks, cranes, ſwans, wild-geeſe, and all other kinds of water-fowl, come hither from the north, during the winter, and return to the northern regions in the ſpring.

The ſtaple of Guilan is raw ſilk, of which they make great quantities, both for their own conſumption and for exportation.

While we remained at Reſhd, two ambaſſadors arrived from the Aijuka Chan, Prince of the Kolmuck-Tartars, in their way to Iſpahan.

November 9th, we left Reſhd, and travelled through thick woods to the ſhore, along which we kept to the left, in all about five agatz, and then lodged in a ſmall empty village.

The 13th, we proceeded ſix agatz to a ſmall town called Keſhker. This day the road lay through pleaſant woods. At ſome diſtance

diſtance from ſea we met with ſome groves of orange trees, where we found bloſſoms, ripe and green fruit on the ſame tree. The great rains detained us ſome days at Keſhker; during which a new Maymander arrived from Iſpahan, who arreſted the former one for ſome fault he had committed on the road.

The 20th, we travelled from Keſhker to the ſhore three agatz, and halted a little; then along the ſhore four agatz farther; and at midnight reached an empty village; a diſagreeable circumſtance, after marching in conſtant rain the whole day, which had rendered the rivers almoſt impaſſable to camels.

From the 21ſt to the 27th, we advanced along the ſhore. The roads were very good. At laſt we came to a town called Aſtara, where we halted for refreſhment. There is nothing remarkable about this place, except its pleaſant ſituation.

December 1ſt, we reached Siarakent, a large village. And next day Langgara, ſituated on the ſhore at the mouth of a river,

ver, an agatz diſtant from the former. And the 3d to Kyzillagatch, five agatz from Langgara. This day we paſſed along ſeveral large bridges, over very deep rivers. In great rains, and ſtrong northerly winds, theſe rivers ſwell above their banks, and, ſpreading to a great extent round the bridges, render them impaſſable.

The 5th, we travelled five agatz to Tzamachava. I was ſurpriſed at the great flocks of water-fowl near this place: ſo numerous were they that one of our people killed eight geeſe at one diſcharge.

The 7th, we entered the plains of Mugan. I deſcribed what ſeemed moſt remarkable in this deſert, when going ſouthward, and ſhall not recapitulate any thing I formerly obſerved. The road was very good. We lodged at the river Bulgara, ſix agatz from Tzamachava; the water of the river is muddy and brackiſh. Next day we advanced ſeven agatz, and lodged again in tents; for there are no houſes in

this plain, and only pit water, very brackiſh.

On the 9th, we travelled ſeven agatz to ſome ſmall huts, beyond the river Kure, which we paſſed on a bridge of boats. We paſſed this river about a day's journey above this place, in going to Iſpahan, when I made my remarks upon it. Seven agatz from theſe huts ſtands a place called Karakurody, the laſt ſtage in the deſert, where we lodged on the 11th.

The 12th, we arrived at Shamachy, five agatz from the laſt ſtage. Since the time we left this place, it had ſuffered grievouſly by the plague, which raged here all the preceding ſummer. It was now much abated, though not quite extinguiſhed. This was a diſagreeable circumſtance, many of our people were ſickly, and two of them died of the diſtemper; for the empty houſes, where the Perſians had died, notwithſtanding every precaution, particularly ſmoking the walls, ſtill proved infectious.

I was informed, that about ſeventy thouſand perſons had been carried off by the peſtilence within the laſt eight months, in Shamachy and the province of Shirvan.

The 15th, my old acquaintance, Monſieur Yeiiſky the Dantzicker, whom I formerly mentioned, came to viſit me. He was ſo altered by ſickneſs that I ſcarce knew him. He told me what diſmal havock the plague had made, particularly in his own family. I aſked, why he did not retire to the country for better air? His anſwer was, whither could he fly from God Almighty! This I find to be the general opinion of the Mahometans, both Perſians and Turks. The ſame day I had a viſit from Father Backond, the only miſſionary at preſent in theſe parts, his companion, Father Ricard, being dead of the plague.

The ſeaſon being now far advanced, it became proper to pitch on ſome place for winter-quarters. The terrible peſtilence which had prevailed ſo long, and with ſuch deſtruction,

deſtruction, greatly detered us from chuſing this place. The ſuperior convenience, however, of it, the preſent abatement of the plague, and chiefly becauſe a province is not obliged to ſupport the expences of an ambaſſador till he arrives at the capital, and ſeveral other reaſons, determined us to winter at Shamachy.

January 15th, 1718, the chan came to town from the country, where he had been all the laſt ſummer.

The 21ſt, the ambaſſador paid the chan a viſit, which was returned the 25th.

Nothing material happened during the winter; only we often heard of the bad ſucceſs of the Shach's forces, which were ſent to Chandahar againſt the rebel Mery Mahmut, and of many incurſions into the Perſian provinces, made by the mountaineers who inhabit between the Black and Caſpian Seas.

March 10th, one of our gentlemen, Monſieur Lopuchin, was ſent away by land to Aſtrachan, with an elephant and all

all the horſes. He was eſcorted by thirty Ruſſian ſoldiers, and ſome Aſtrachan Tartars. In his march, between Derbent and Terky, he was attacked by ſome hundreds of the mountaineers, called Shaffkalls, who killed one man and two horſes, and wounded ſeveral men and the elephant. Meeting, however, with a warm reception, they thought proper to retire, but carried off three of the horſes. The gentleman arrived ſafe, without any further misfortune, at Aſtrachan.

April 14th, ſhips, commanded by Captain Rentle, arrived at Niezabatt, in order to tranſport the ambaſſador to Aſtrachan. He could not, however, proceed immediately to embark, for we were obliged to wait for an anſwer to an expreſs, which the chan had deſpatched to Iſpahan on affairs of importance, which did not return till the end of May. All of us impatiently deſired to leave Shamachy before the great heat came on. In the mean time, we diverted ourſelves with hunting. I went often to ſee the

the ſilk-worms feeding on mulberry leaves. The inhabitants were apprehenſive that the plague would break out again in the ſummer; and we had already buried twenty-two of our people ſince our arrival on the frontiers of Perſia.

On the night of the eight of May, there was ſuch flaſhes of lightning, as had not happened in the memory of man; though the night was dark, I could plainly ſee the cattle in the adjacent fields, by means of the coruſcations; the lightning was accompanied with dreadful claps of thunder, which laſted above two hours.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *From Shamachy to St Peterſburgh.*

JUNE 16th, we left Shamachy, and in four days arrived ſafe at Niezabatt, where we found ſhips waiting to receive us.

On the 21ſt, we began to load the veſſels with all poſſible deſpatch, which was ſoon accompliſhed by the aſſiſtance of ſome Ruſs ſoldiers, who had wintered at this place. Since I have mentioned theſe ſoldiers, I ſhall briefly relate how they happened to be on this coaſt.

The people of Chiva, a territory (ſee p. 48.) eaſtward from the Caſpian Sea, having ſeveral

ſeveral times robbed and plundered ſome caravans of Ruſſian merchants going to Bucharia, his Czariſh Majeſty determined to ſend a ſmall body of regular troops, and ſome Coſſacks, to demand ſatisfaction for ſuch outrages committed in time of peace. For this purpoſe, Mr Beckvitz, a captain of the guards, who was appointed to command in this expedition, repaired to Aſtrachan, in ſummer 1716, in order to make all the neceſſary preparations againſt next ſpring. Having accordingly embarked his men, proviſions, and ammunition, at the proper ſeaſon, he ſteered his courſe along the Caſpian Sea, and landed at a place called Kraſna-vooda, i. e. red water, as near to Chiva as he conveniently could. This place was barren and uninhabited. Having therefore moored his tranſports, he erected a ſmall fort to ſecure his retreat, in caſe of accidents.

In the mean time, he ſent a friendly meſſage to the chan of Chiva, to notify his arrival, and to deſire that he would furniſh him

him with proviſions and quarters for his men; for which he offered to pay ready money. The crafty Tartar returned for anſwer, that he might come to Chiva with the greateſt ſafety, where all his demands ſhould be granted. At the ſame time, ſent him a preſent of fruits and freſh proviſions, and guides to conduct him on the road, accompanied with the higheſt expreſſions of reſpect to his Czariſh Majeſty. Mr Beckvitz having left about three hundred men in the fort, to guard the camp and proviſions, proceeded with the reſt, and a few field-pieces, towards Chiva.

In three or four days he arrived in the neighbourhood of the town, where he was met by ſeveral of the chiefs, who came with compliments from the chan, and to ſettle matters relative to the cantonment of the ſoldiers. This particular was difficult to adjuſt.

Mr Beckvitz inſiſted, that all his men ſhould be quartered in the town, and nothing but infatuation could have influenced

him to alter ſo prudent a reſolution. But the Tartars ſtarted many objections againſt putting it in execution, and pretended that the chan and themſelves were willing to agree to it, but the people were averſe, and jealous of having ſo many armed men lodged within their walls; and therefore they propoſed, as a means of quieting the minds of the people, that he ſhould ſeparate his men, in order to be quartered more conveniently in the adjacent villages, and that himſelf ſhould have lodgings in the town, with a ſufficient guard to attend him. This motion was ſtrongly oppoſed by all the old officers, who looked on it as a ſtratagem laid for their deſtruction. And ſuch in reality it proved in the end.

Mr Beckvitz, deluded by falſe promiſes, at laſt conſented to canton his men. No ſooner were they divided into ſmall parties, than they were incloſed, and attacked by great numbers of Tartars, and moſt of them either killed or taken priſoners, who were afterwards ſold for ſlaves. A few of them

them taking the alarm, ſtood to their arms, and made a brave defence for ſome time, endeavouring chiefly to regain their camp and ſhips; but having a barren deſert to paſs, and the Tartar horſe haraſſing them day and night, they were at laſt obliged to ſubmit to fatal neceſſity. The imprudence of the general was the ſole cauſe of all theſe misfortunes; for, being in no want of proviſions or ammunition, had he only kept his men together, the whole combined power of theſe Tartars could not have prevented his regaining the camp and ſhipping.

The camp was next attacked by the Tartars; but they were repulſed by the garriſon, which having now intelligence of what had paſſed at Chiva, demoliſhed the fort, reimbarked the men and ſtores, and ſet ſail for Aſtrachan. The ſeaſon was now too far advanced to gain that port; this circumſtance, together with hard gales of contrary winds, obliged them to put into Niezabatt, in order to paſs the winter. Here they were hoſpitably received by the

Per-

Perſians; and the preſence of the ambaſſador at Shamachy contributed greatly to the relief of theſe poor unfortunate people.

Unhappy Beckvitz himſelf happened to be taken priſoner. He was ſent for to the chan's tent, on ſome pretence of buſineſs, where they firſt ſtruck off his head, then, after venting their barbarous rage on his dead body, they flayed it, and, having ſtuffed the ſkin with ſtraw, placed it, a miſerable ſpectacle, on one of the city gates.

This unfortunate gentleman was the ſon of a petty prince, or chief of a tribe in Tzerkeſſia, and had been ſent to Ruſſia in his infancy, as a hoſtage for his father's fidelity.

Being now on the point of departing from Perſia, called by the Perſians Iran, and alſo Pharſiſtan, I ſhall cloſe what I have to offer regarding that country, by giving a liſt of the principal officers of ſtate who attend that mighty monarch at the megiliſs, i. e. public audience of ambaſſadors; they ſit in the hall of audience according

cording to their reſpective ranks, and have all of them, on thoſe occaſions, magnificent capes, and robes of ſtate, kept in the King's wardrobe for that purpoſe.

1. The Etmadowlett, prime miniſter.
2. Spaſſelaar, general in chief.
3. Kurtſy Baſha, genetal of 12,000 men.
4. Kular-agaſſy, director of the priſons.
5. Tfengy Baſha, general of muſketeers.
6. Iſhek-agaſſy Baſha, maſter of ceremonies.
7. Divan Begg, chief juſtice.
8. Toptſhy Baſha, maſter of the ordnance.
9. Vaggian Aviz, ſecretary of ſtate.
10. Meriſh-kaz Baſha, grand falconer.
11. Dgevedar Baſha, general of the artillery.

12.

12. The Milachurd Baſha Giloff, maſter of horſe.
13. Milachurd Yaſſy Baſha, maſter of the field-horſes.
14. Kolopha.
15. Mamalek, comptroller of the houſehold.
16. Kchaſſa, cabinet ſecretary.
17. Nazyr Daftar, ſteward of the houſehold.
18. Viſir Iſpahan, chief magiſtrate of Iſpahan.
19. Viſir Kurtſy, general of horſe.
20. Viſir Kule.
21. Chaſnadar Baſha, chief treaſurer.
22. Kaliphar Kaſhkar, chief judge in civil affairs.
23. Doroga Taftar, judge of the city.
24. Sachapt Tauchtzy.
25. Sachapt Narviſs, chief aſtrologer.
26. Hakim Baſha, chief phyſician.

The

The following officers attend the Shach wherever he goes.

1. The Ibrahim Aga, chief of the eunuchs.
2. Yeuſh Baſha, chief of the white eunuchs.
3. Achmet Aga, chief of the black eunuchs.
4. Klitch Kurtſhy, ſword-bearer.
5. Tzatyn Baſha, quiver-bearer.
6. Saddach Kurtſhy, bow-bearer.
7. Tfang Kurtſhy, muſket-bearer.
8. Dgid Kurtſhy, dart-bearer.
9. Kalchan Kurtſhy, target-bearer.

The following are the chief doctors of the law of Mahomet.

1. Sadyr Chaſſa, the ſame office in Perſia as that of the Mufti in Turkey.
2. Sadyr Mammalek.
3. Fazyl.
4. Shach Iſlam.
5. Chazy.
6. Mullah Baſha.

7. Mu-

7. Mudaraſs.
8. Piſhnamaſh.
9. Mutaſhett Baſha.
10. Moaſham Baſha.

Theſe are the principal; beſides whom, there are many other officers, too numerous to recite. With the foregoing liſt I cloſe what I have to ſay regarding Perſia.

The 26th, we ſet ſail from Niẹzabatt with a fair wind at ſouth-eaſt, which laſted only a few hours; after which we were becalmed for three days.

July 2d, the wind became again fair, and carried us, with a gentle breeze, out of the deep water into ſoundings; but turning contrary, we came to anchor in thirty fathom water, where we lay till the 10th, when it blew a very hard gale, which drove us from our anchors out to ſea; and, continuing for two days, brought us again in ſight of the Perſian ſhore, which was at this time no very agreeable object.

The

The 13th, the wind chopped about favourable, and ſo continued, with little variation, till the 18th, when we arrived ſafe at Aſtrachan, to the great joy of all our company.

September 7th, leaving Aſtrachan, we ſailed up the Volga. Our progreſs, contrary to the courſe of the river, was very ſlow and tedious. In calms the boats were drawn up by men, who went upon the banks; but in hard gales, we were obliged to haul them near the ſide, and lie ſtill.

October 12th, after a voyage of five weeks, we arrived at the town of Saratoff, about eight hundred verſt diſtant from Aſtrachan. The winter drawing on, prevented our farther progreſs by water. We therefore unloaded, and diſcharged the boats, being reſolved to remain here till the ſnow fell, when we might proceed by land in ſledges.

November 1ſt, there had now been a little fall of ſnow, ſufficient to ſmooth the

roads, and this day we ſet out from Saratoff in ſledges.

The 3d, we came to a little town called Petroſky, about ninety verſt from Saratoff.

The 8th, we came to a large town called Penze, ninety verſt from the former. As we advanced to the north, the froſt and ſnow daily increaſed, which made the roads very ſmooth and eaſy. Before we left this place, a ſudden rain obliged us to halt a few days. Here we met with Brigadier Kropotoff, who, with ſome regiments of dragoons, had winter quarters at this place.

The 14th, the froſt and ſnow returning, we ſet out from Penze.

The 15th, we reached Saranſky, eighty verſt from the former. Here we found many Swediſh officers, taken at Poltava, who were well quartered in a plentiful country.

The 17th, we left Saranſky, and the 21ſt, arrived at Arzamaſs, an hundred verſt from Saranſky.

The

The 24th, we came to Murum, 360 verſt from Saratoff, which I mentioned in going ſouthward by water. From Saratoff to Petroſky, the country is ſomewhat dry and barren; but the reſt of the country, through which we paſſed, is very fruitful, producing all kinds of corn, fine woods, particularly of oaks, interſperſed with many villages; and the face of the country, conſtantly varied by plain and gently riſing grounds, affords a moſt beautiful proſpect. From Murum we came to the town of Wolodimir, an hundred and thirty verſt from Murum. This place is large and well peopled, and famous for being formerly the reſidence of a great prince of the ſame name.

The 30th, we arrived ſafe at the city of Moſco, an hundred and forty verſt from the former, and ſeven hundred and ſeventy from Saratoff.

December 19th, we proceeded towards St Peterſburgh, where we arrived on the 30th. Nothing material happened during our

our return through Ruſſia, and what was moſt remarkable in the country I deſcribed in going ſouthward. I cannot help taking notice of an extraordinary caſe of one of our people, in an exceſſive cold night. The fellow, expecting to baniſh all feeling of cold from himſelf, drunk a large quantity of ſpirits, which produced a drowſineſs, that ended in ſleep in an open ſledge. On arriving at a village, the perſon was found ſtiff, ſpeechleſs, and apparently quite dead; but being carried to a brook hard by, and plunged ſeveral times in the water, and then rubbed with ſnow, and brought into a warm room, with proper regimen he ſoon recovered, and was able to proceed next day.

I have often obſerved, in other inſtances, that the uſe of ſpiritous liquors in cold weather, is the worſt of remedies; for, though they warm at firſt, they leave a chilneſs behind them, not to be got clear of for a conſiderable time. I have found by experience nothing preferable to weak warm

warm liquors, mixed with a little ſpirits. The Ruſſian travellers carefully avoid the exceſſive uſe of brandy in ſtrong froſts.

Thus I have finiſhed my account of a long, tedious, and dangerous journey, which laſted for three years, attended with many difficulties, not eaſily conceived by thoſe who have not travelled the ſame road. At our return to St Peterſburgh, we found his Majeſty at that place, who, I was informed, was well ſatisfied with the conduct of his ambaſſador, whoſe principal errand was to cultivate and cement amity, and a good correſpondence, between the two crowns of Ruſſia and Perſia.

Notwithſtanding the war with Sweden had continued near twenty years, this active monarch had not neglected, nor even ſuſpended, the building and adorning his new capital. During my abſence, the appearances of things were ſo changed, that I could ſcarce imagine myſelf in the ſame place; ſo ſurpriſing was the alteration in ſo ſhort a time. Beſides, this Prince had fitted

ted out a navy of thirty ſhips of war, and three hundred gallies: Interpriſes which might have been the work of ages, but not ſuperior to the ſingle induſtry and activity of Peter the Firſt.

A JOUR-

A

# JOURNEY

FROM

# St PETERSBURGH

IN RUSSIA,

TO

# PEKIN

IN CHINA,

WITH AN EMBASSY

FROM HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY,

# PETER THE FIRST,

TO

# KAMHI

EMPEROR OF CHINA,

IN THE YEAR M.DCC.XIX.

*Names of the principal perſons who compoſed the train of the Ambaſſador,*

Leoff Vaſſilovich Iſmayloff.

Secretary of the Embaſſy,

Laurence de Lange.

The Ambaſſador's Secretary,

Ivan Glazunoff.

Gentlemen of the Embaſſy.

Kneaz Alexander Saſeckin,
Nicolaus de Pauli Kreſtitz,
Lukian Neſteroff,
Alexie Divoff,
David Grave,
The Author of this Journal.

Gregory, a Prieſt.

Interpreters, clerks, a band of muſic, valets, footmen, &c. in all to the number of about ſixty perſons; beſides a troop of twenty-five dragoons, for our eſcort from Toboloſky to Pekin, and back.

# A

# JOURNEY, &c.

## CHAP. I.

### *From St Peterſburgh to Tobolſky, the Capital of Siberia.*

WHEN I arrived at St Peterſburgh from Iſpahan, I met with a very ſenſible mortification, on finding that my very worthy friend, Dr Areſkine, was no more; he died about ſix weeks before my arrival. Not long after which, upon being informed that an embaſſy was preparing for China, and that his Majeſty had nomi-

nated Leoff Vaſſilovich Iſmayloff, a gentleman of a family very well known and much reſpected in Ruſſia, and a captain of the guards, for that employment, I became very deſirous of making that journey in his train.

Upon my acquainting my very good friend, Artemy Petrovich Valenſky, with my deſire, he, without loſs of time, recommended me to Leoff Vaſſilovich Iſmayloff, the appointed ambaſſador, in ſuch a manner as produced, on all occaſions, marks of friendſhip and regard for me, as well during the journey, as alſo after our return, until he died in 1736.

The time between my return from Iſpahan and my ſetting out for Pekin, I ſpent with much ſatisfaction with my friends and acquaintance at St Peterſburgh. Among whom I eſteemed as ſuch, not only ſeveral worthy perſons of my own countrymen, as well in trade as in the ſervice of his Majeſty; but alſo not a few of the Ruſſian gentry, to whom I became known

known on occaſion of my journey to Perſia, and of whom I found many to be perſons of much worth and honour.

At length the preſents for the Emperor of China being got ready, as well as the ambaſſador's deſpatches, I ſet out from St Peterſburgh the 14th of July, 1719, in company with Meſſieurs Lange and Grave, attended by a few ſervants; the firſt was a native of Sweden, and the other of Courland. We travelled to the city of Moſco in ſmall parties, the more eaſily to procure poſt-horſes. The weather being very hot obliged us to make ſhort ſtages, confining us moſtly to the mornings and evenings. Having in my Perſian journal deſcribed what is moſt remarkable on this road, I have nothing to add to what I have there obſerved.

Nothing material happened during our journey to Moſco, where we arrived on the 30th of July, and joined the ambaſſador, who had arrived there two days before, having paſſed us on the road. We took

took up our lodgings at the houſe of Mr Belayof, near the triumphal arch. Here we ſpent five weeks in preparing barks to go by water to Cazan, and neceſſaries for ſo long and unfrequented a road. This interval we paſſed very agreeably, being invited to all the entertainments the place afforded.

September 9th, having ſhipped our baggage, and prepared every thing for our departure, we went ourſelves on board; and, after firing nine guns, rowed down the river Moſco. There is a ſhorter way from Moſco to Siberia through Yaroſlave; but, as we were incumbered with heavy baggage, conſiſting chiefly of preſents from his Majeſty to the Emperor of China, it was thought beſt to proceed as far as poſſible by water.

Accordingly, we continued our courſe down the Moſco river to Kolumna, then into the river Ocka; and, paſſing Pereſlave-Reſanſky, Murum, and other towns of leſs note, we arrived at Niſhna-Novogorod,

rod, ſituated to the right hand, on a high bank of the Ocka, at its confluence with the Volga. Leaving Niſhna, we entered the river Volga, and proceeded towards Cazan.

After a voyage of ſix weeks we arrived at Cazan on the 20th of October. We intended to have continued our route farther down the Volga to the river Kama, which falls into the Volga about ſixty verſt below Cazan, and then up the Kama to Solikamſky; but the advancement of the ſeaſon, and the froſt coming on apace, made us reſolve to remain at Cazan till the winter ſet in, leſt we ſhould run the hazard of being frozen up near ſome uninhabited place on the Kama.

In conſequence of this reſolution, the barks were diſcharged, and we took up our lodgings in the city. Here I found many of my old friends and acquaintance, particularly the Swediſh officers; among others, General Hamilton, General Roſen, and Baron Wachmaiter, who ſtill remained priſoners

priſoners of war, regretting the hard fate of their long captivity. We ſtaid here about five weeks, waiting for the ſnow falling to ſmooth the roads, and in the mean time were employed in preparing ſledges, and other neceſſaries for our journey. Having formerly made my remarks on this route, and particularly on Cazan and its neighbourhood, I ſhall now purſue our journey towards Siberia.

November 24th, we ſent off the heavy baggage; but Monſieur Iſmayloff, with a few of the gentlemen, remained ſome days longer, becauſe it was diſagreeable travelling on rough roads with loaded ſledges. At laſt, on the 28th, late in the night, the ambaſſador quitted Cazan, keeping to the north-eaſtward. There being many villages on the road, we changed horſes as often as occaſion required.

The 29th, we travelled through woods, conſiſting chiefly of tall oaks, fir, and birch. This part of the country is very fruitful, producing plenty of cattle, corn, and

and honey. The hives are not made like thoſe in England; the inhabitants take the trunk of a lime-tree, aſpin, or any ſoft wood, of about five or ſix feet long; having ſcooped it hollow, they make a large aperture in one ſide, about a foot in length and four inches broad; they then fix croſs rods within the trunk for the bees to build upon, and, having done this, cloſe up the place carefully with a board, leaving ſmall notches for the bees to go in and out. Theſe hives are planted in proper places, at the ſide of a wood, and tied to a tree with ſtrong wythes, to prevent their being deſtroyed by the bears, who are great devourers of honey. The wax and honey exported yearly from Cazan make a very conſiderable article of trade. I have ſeen above an hundred hives near one village, and was informed, that they have a method of extracting the honey and wax without killing the bees, which would certainly be worth knowing; but I was told it ſo indiſtinctly, that I could not underſtand

ſtand it, and had no opportunity of ſeeing it practiſed.

The villages through which we paſſed were moſtly inhabited by the Tzeremiſh and Tzoowaſh Tartars, whom I have formerly mentioned. The three following days the roads were rough and narrow, lying through dark woods, interſperſed with ſome villages and corn-fields. We paſſed the Ick and ſeveral ſmaller rivers, and then the Viatka, a pretty large one; all which diſcharge themſelves into the Kama.

After a tedious journey of ſix days we came to a ſmall town called Klinof, or more commonly Viatka, from the river of that name running near it. The ſituation of this place is very pleaſant, having round it corn-fields and fine paſture; and the rivers in the neighbourhood abounding with great variety of fiſh.

The country about Klinof is reckoned ſo proper paſturage for ſheep, that his Majeſty ordered ſome thouſands of German ſheep, moſt eſteemed for their wool, to be bought

bought and ſent thither, with a view to eſtabliſh a manufactory at this place for clothing his army. He alſo cauſed a German ſhepherd to be engaged in his ſervice, who is ſettled here, and enjoys a conſiderable ſalary. The flocks are already ſo numerous, that I am perſuaded they will in time anſwer the end propoſed. A thouſand other inſtances might be produced of the unbounded genius of this great and active Prince, who ſpares no expence, and overlooks nothing that can contribute either to the honour or advantage of his empire. I cannot omit another ſeemingly inconſiderable article; I mean pump-leather. This commodity was formerly brought from England and Holland at no ſmall charge; to ſave which, his Majeſty gave orders to engage an Engliſh tanner for a certain number of years, whom he ſent to Cazan, where the beſt hides are, to teach the natives the art of dreſſing them. This ſcheme has fully anſwered the end in view, and produced abundance, not only

of pump-leather, but of every other kind of leather whereof that country hath any need.

There being no verſt-poſts on this, tho' on moſt other roads in Ruſſia, I compute the diſtance between Cazan and Klinof to be about five hundred verſt; each verſt meaſures one thouſand one hundred and ſixty-ſix yards and two feet Engliſh. Here I met with ſeveral Swediſh officers, who paſſed a ſolitary life in a pleaſant and plentiful country. We halted one day to refreſh ourſelves; and the next, being the 5th of December, we left the baggage to follow leiſurely, and ſet out again toward Solikamſky. On the 7th, we reached Kay-gorod, a ſmall town. We perceived the cold becoming daily more intenſe as we proceeded northward along the banks of the Kama.

The 8th, we quitted Kay-gorod in a vehement cold. Though there was little wind, and a thick fog, the froſt continued ſo penetrating, that ſeveral of our people, who

who were moſt expoſed, had their fingers and toes frozen. Moſt of them recovered by the common method of rubbing the numbed parts with ſnow; but, had we not halted from time to time at villages to let them warm themſelves, they muſt have periſhed by cold. On the 9th, we arrived at the town of Solikamſky, derived from Sole ſalt and Kama the river, on the banks of which it is ſituated. Our arrival was a moſt agreeable circumſtance, as the piercing froſt ſtill prevailed.

Solikamſky is a large and populous town, and the capital of a province of that name; which is at preſent annexed to the government of Siberia. Its ſituation is very pleaſant, upon the eaſtern bank of the Kama. This river is of great fame in theſe parts of the world. It riſes far to the north, and in its courſe receives the Parma, Pilva, Koyva, and many other rivers, which together form a mighty ſtream, very nearly equal to the Volga, into which it diſcharges itſelf, about ſixty verſt below the

the city of Cazan, and loſes its name. Its long courſe to the ſouth-weſt is now turned ſhort, by the current of the Volga, and carried toward the ſouth-eaſt. The Kama is well ſtored with variety of excellent fiſh. On the banks are fine corn-fields and paſture grounds, but often interrupted by thick woods, eſpecially to the north. Theſe woods are ſtocked with different kinds of game, and wild beaſts, natural to the climate.

Solikamſky is famous for having many ſalt-pits in its neighbourhood, the property of my worthy friend Baron Stroganof, by virtue of a grant from his Majeſty. The Baron has brought theſe works to ſuch perfection, that he is able to ſerve all Ruſſia with ſalt, and could beſides furniſh a conſiderable quantity for exportation, were there any demand. The ſalt is of a brownish colour, and very good of the kind.

The common method of procuring this ſalt is as follows: They dig pits in the earth till they come to the ſalt-rock, which ſeems

ſeems to lie in theſe parts at a certain diſtance from the ſurface, as coals do in other places of the world. When the pit is finiſhed, it is naturally, and of courſe, filled with water; which, ſtanding for a convenient time, till it is ſufficiently impregnated with the ſalt, is then drawn out with pumps and other engines, and put into large iron caldrons, where it is boiled to a proper conſiſtence; when, the water being evaporated, the ſalt is left upon the bottom.

I was informed of another curious and extraordinary proceſs, by which they draw ſalt-water from a freſh-water river, which I cannot omit taking notice of. In the rivers near this place there is a mixture of ſalt-water ariſing from the ſprings, which either have their ſource in the ſalt-rocks, or run through them. It is the buſineſs of the inhabitants to diſcover the places where theſe ſprings empty themſelves into the rivers, which they do by diving, or ſome other manner; having done this, they make

make a large frame of ſtrong thick balks or beams joined very cloſe, about fifteen or twenty feet ſquare, and of depth enough to reach the bottom of the river, while part of it remains above the ſurface; when the ice is very ſtrong, they ſink this machine into the river, over the place where the ſalt ſpring iſſues, and drive ſtrong piles of wood all around, to hinder its being forced from this poſition by the current, or by floating ice in the end of winter. During the winter, they draw out all the water, mud, and ſand, contained within the machine, and ſink it ſtill deeper until it hath penetrated the bottom of the channel of the river, and prevented all further communication between it and the ſalt ſpring. The frame is now filled only with the ſalt-water, iſſuing from the ſpring, from whence it is drawn, and the ſalt extracted, as formerly deſcribed.

However tedious and expenſive this proceſs may ſeem, theſe people perform it with great readineſs and eaſe; and, what is ſtill

ſtill more extraordinary, without regular inſtruction in any art ſubſervient to that purpoſe, but by the mere force of natural genius. The Baron has a great number of hands conſtantly employed in this ſervice. And the woods for fewel are inexhauſtible.

When the ſalt is made, it is laid up in granaries, till the ſeaſon of tranſporting it to Moſco, St Peterſburgh, and other places. The barks for this purpoſe, called by the Ruſſians *lodia*, are of a conſtruction ſomewhat uncommon. I have ſeen ſome of them longer and broader than any firſt rate man of war in England, and not one iron nail in the whole fabric. All of them are flat-bottomed, having one tall tree for a maſt, and a ſail of light canvaſs in proportion. To manage this mighty machine, ſix or eight hundred men are neceſſary. The rudder is nearly as long as the bark, and ſo unwieldy, that ſometimes it requires forty or fifty men to ſteer it. They load theſe ſhips very deep, and let them float down

down the Kama into the Volga; where, if the wind is not favourable, they are obliged to draw them, againſt the ſtream, to the place of their deſtination.

I cannot leave Solikamſky without mentioning the rich iron-mines in the country adjacent, at Kathenaburg, and other places of that diſtrict, which produce iron, equal perhaps in quality to the beſt in the world. Theſe works have of late been brought to great perfection, by the ſkill and indefatigable induſtry of Mr. Demidof, a native of Ruſſia, enabled and encouraged to carry them on by a beneficial grant from his Majeſty, who is always ready to aſſiſt and protect thoſe who, by their ingenuity, form projects to the advantage of his country.

Theſe works, I am informed, are ſtill capable of great improvement. The ore is very good, and riſes in many places to the very ſurface of the earth, and may be dug at a ſmall expence. As for wood to ſmelt it, no place in the world can have greater advantage. Beſides, all the machines may

be

be driven by water; and there is an eaſy communication by the rivers to St Peterſburgh, for exportation, and to many other parts of Ruſſia, for inland conſumption.

In theſe mines are often found magnets of various ſizes. I have ſeen ſome of them very large, and of high virtue.

There are ſeveral other iron-works in Ruſſia; for inſtance, at Tula, Olonitz, and other places; but the metal is of an inferior quality to that of Siberia. Beſides theſe of iron, there are alſo rich mines of excellent copper at this place, which, being lately diſcovered, are capable of great improvement. The copper-ore alſo riſes to the very ſurface.

In the neighbourhood of Solikamſky is found the foſſil called aſbeſtos; of which is made a kind of cloth like linen, that may be put into the fire, and taken out again, unconſumed. This cloth was known among the ancients, and uſed by them on ſeveral occaſions. At preſent, it goes by the name of the incombuſtible linen.

The aſbeſtos, like many both curious and uſeful diſcoveries, was found out by mere accident in theſe parts. I ſhall briefly relate in what manner: A certain huntſman being about to load his fowling-piece, and wanting wadding, obſerved a great ſtone in the woods, which ſeemed to have ſome flakes upon it like looſe threads; he ſoon found that, by rubbing, it turned into a ſoft downy ſubſtance fit for his uſe: He therefore filled his pocket with it; but, having fired his piece, was ſurpriſed to ſee that the gunpowder had no effect upon the wadding. This raiſed his curioſity ſo far, that he kindled a fire on purpoſe, into which he put the aſbeſtos; but ſtill took it out entire, and of the ſame uſe as formerly. This experiment ſo frightened the poor ſportſman, that he imagined the devil had taken poſſeſſion of the foſſil. On returning home, he narrated what had happened to the prieſt of the pariſh, who, amazed at the relation, repeated it ſo frequently, that at laſt he told it to a perſon who was acquainted

quainted with that quality peculiar to the aſbeſtos; and, on examination, found the flakes to be that foſſil.

The weather is much colder at Solikamſky than at other places ſituated ſeveral degrees nearer to the north pole. Perhaps its great diſtance from any part of the ocean may be partly the cauſe of the exceſſive cold which ſometimes prevails.

December 10th, the ambaſſador took poſt-horſes, and ſet out for Tobolſky, leaving the baggage to follow as ſhould be moſt convenient. About midnight we came to a village called Martinſky; here having changed horſes, we ſoon reached the mountains named Verchaturſky-gory, where we found the ſnow very deep, and a ſtrong froſt ſtill continued. We kept on our journey, aſcending and deſcending theſe high and ſteep mountains for the ſpace of fifteen hours. In ſuch of the valleys as are fit for culture, are found Ruſſian villages well peopled. And, where the woods are cut down,

down, there appeared a beautiful landſcape, even at this bleak ſeaſon.

Theſe mountains divide Ruſſia from Siberia. They run in a ridge from north to ſouth, inclining a little to the eaſt and weſt of theſe points. They are quite covered with wood, conſiſting of tall firs of different kinds, larixes, birch, and other trees natural to the climate; and abound with game, and various kinds of wild beaſts. Their length, from north to ſouth, I cannot aſcertain; but compute their breadth, where we paſſed, to be about forty Engliſh miles. But they are not near ſo high as the mountains I have ſeen in Perſia, and other parts of the world.

Having paſſed theſe mountains, we deſcended, on the 11th, into a country finely varied with plains and riſing grounds, interſperſed with woods, villages, corn-fields, and paſturage; and, in the evening, reached the town called Verchaturia, from verch, which ſignifies high, and Tura the name of the river on which the town ſtands. This river

river is navigable, and runs to the eaſt till it empties itſelf into the Tobol. Verchaturia is pleaſantly ſituated upon a riſing ground, and fortified with a ditch and palliſades. It is governed by a commandant, who has under him a garriſon, conſiſting of ſome regular troops and Coſſacks. What makes Verchaturia conſiderable, is its being a frontier town, and commanding the only entry from Ruſſia into Siberia. Here is a cuſtom-houſe, where all merchants are obliged to make entry of what ſums of money or merchandiſe they carry into Siberia, or from Siberia into Ruſſia; on all which is charged a duty of ten per cent. to his Majeſty. Though this impoſt may appear high, it is really very moderate, conſidering the profits which the trade yields, and it extends only to the money to be employed in traffic; for every merchant is allowed a certain ſum for his expences, free of all duty.

The country adjacent to Verchaturia is inhabited by a race of people called Vogullitz,

gullitz, who differ in language, dreſs, and manners, from any nation I ever ſaw. Their features and perſons have a reſemblance of the Tzoowaſhians near Cazan. They have ſome obſcure notions of the Deity, and are very fond of a kind of wizards called Shamans, whom they hold in great eſteem. I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more fully of theſe Shamans afterwards. The Vogullitz know nothing of agriculture, but live in huts in the woods, and ſubſiſt by hunting and fiſhing. They are an honeſt inoffenſive people; but not very numerous; ariſing, perhaps, from their unſocial and uncomfortable manner of life. The Archbiſhop of Tobolſky hath of late, by his pious labours, converted many of them to Chriſtianity; who now begin to build houſes, and cultivate ſome appearance of ſociety; and probably, in time, the reſt will follow ſo laudable an example. This, however, will depend much on the encouragement they meet with, from the clergy and ſub-governours of provinces. I

viſited

viſited them as often as any opportunity offered, both in their huts and houſes, and endeavoured to procure ſome information about their original, or from whence they came to ſettle in theſe northern parts, but could obtain nothing ſatisfactory on either of theſe heads.

Before we enter Siberia, it will not be perhaps improper to give a ſhort account of the ſingular manner in which this moſt extenſive country was diſcovered by the Ruſſians.

About the beginning of the laſt century, a certain Don-Coſſack, named Yarmak Timotheovitz, being obliged, by ſome accident, to leave his native country, and having no means of ſubſiſtence, he, with a few accomplices, betook themſelves to robbing on the highways. He ſoon became famous and powerful; for he robbed only the rich; and, by a generoſity uncommon in ſuch a character, liberally beſtowed to ſuch as were in want. He never killed, nor even hurt any perſon, unleſs compelled

to

to ſuch outrages in his own defence. This behaviour ſo raiſed his reputation, that all the idle fellows in the country enlifted themſelves in his gang, proud to follow ſo brave and enterpriſing a leader. He became at laſt ſo troubleſome, that the governours of the ſouthern provinces ſent out troops to apprehend him; but, being previouſly informed of the deſign, he withdrew from the land, and procuring boats upon the Volga, commenced pirate on that river. Being attacked here alſo, he was forced to croſs the Caſpian Sea, and ſhelter himſelf on the Perſian ſhore, where he paſſed ſome time under the diſguiſe of a merchant. Being again diſcovered, he was obliged, by the Perſians, to quit their coaſt: And now his only refuge was to return to the Volga, where he behaved with great circumſpection, often lurking in woods and villages; and, being in no want of money, paid the inhabitants liberally for every thing he needed. Foreſeeing, however, that ſuch a numerous gang could not be long conceal-

ed,

ed, he took the reſolution of leaving the Volga, and ſteered his courſe up the river Kama, at that time little frequented by the Ruſſians, or any other nation; here he hoped to find, at leaſt, a ſafe retreat during the winter. Yarmak, therefore, with his followers, amounting to the number of two hundred, continued their voyage up the Kama, till they were ſtopped by the ice, at no great diſtance from a large village, now belonging to Baron Stroganof. The inhabitants were alarmed at the ſight of ſo many armed men, whom they were not able to oppoſe, and therefore gave them an hoſpitable reception. Yarmak demanded only proviſions and winter-quarters for his money, promiſing to leave them unmoleſted next ſpring. In conſequence of this declaration, he and his followers paſſed the winter very quietly in this remote place; afraid, however, at the approach of ſummer, of being diſcovered by the government, and uncertain what courſe to ſteer; it was at laſt determined to croſs the moun-

tains of Verchaturia, and go to the eaſtward, in hopes of finding ſome inhabited country, or at leaſt a ſafe retreat.

Having paſſed the mountains, they arrived at the river Tur; and, finding it navigable, ſoon made a ſufficient number of canoes for the whole gang. After rowing for ſome days down the Tur, they diſcovered ſeveral villages of Mahometan Tartars, who were ſurpriſed at the ſight of ſuch a number of ſtrangers, of whom they had before never ſo much as heard. Yarmak having got what intelligence he could procure of the ſituation and government of the country, purſued his voyage to the river Tobol, where he found the towns populous, and the land well cultivated. His approach alarmed the King of the Tartars, who aſſembled a numerous body of horſe and foot, armed with bows and arrows, lances, and other ſuch weapons, with whom our adventurer had many ſkirmiſhes, and defeated great multitudes, by means of his fire-arms, which had never before been known

known in theſe parts. The poor Tartars were as much amazed and terrified, at the ſight of the Ruſſians and their arms, as the inhabitants of Mexico on the arrival of the Spaniards in America, to which Siberia may, in many reſpects, be compared.

Yarmak, finding his enemies daily more numerous the nearer he approached the reſidence of the Tartar King; having alſo loſt many of his men, in continual encounters, and ſpent the greateſt part of his ammunition; knowing, beſides, of no place of ſafety, where he might paſs the winter, which is both long and ſevere in this quarter; at laſt determined to retreat. He therefore ſteered his courſe to the weſt, up the Tobol and Tur rivers. The furious Tartars gave him no reſt, but haraſſed him perpetually from the banks. He himſelf and few more eſcaped, with a conſiderable booty, and returned to the village, where they wintered the preceding year. The inhabitants, on ſeeing the rich furs and other ſpoils, gave them a welcome reception.

And

And Yarmak did not forget to diſpenſe his favours liberally among thoſe who had entertained him in his diſtreſs, when he fled from juſtice.

Our adventurer had now time to reflect on his miſerable circumſtances. He conſidered, that his lurking in theſe parts, tho' remote from any town, could not be long a ſecret: To make another attempt againſt the Tartars with a handful of men, ill provided with arms and ammunition, might perhaps be ruinous, and certainly unſucceſsful. He therefore reſolved to ſubmit himſelf to his Majeſty's clemency, in hopes of obtaining a gracious pardon for himſelf and his accomplices, on condition of pointing out the way to a rich and eaſy conqueſt of a country which he had lately diſcovered. The propoſal was made at court by a friend, and was of too great importance to be neglected. In ſhort, Yarmak was brought to Moſco, under a ſafe conduct, where he communicated the whole affair. He begged his Majeſty's pardon, and aſked

a certain number of troops, which he promiſed to lead to a glorious conqueſt. His Majeſty granted him a pardon, approved of the expedition, and gave immediate orders for the troops to attend him. They marched to Solikamſky, where they paſſed the winter in making preparations for the enterpriſe, which was to be undertaken in the ſpring.

During this interval, Yarmak behaved with ſurpriſing prudence and activity, and diſcovered himſelf to be a perſon of uncommon genius. He collected ſuch of his former followers as remained, and formed them into a company, in whom he could confide on all occaſions.

At the proper ſeaſon, the troops ſet out towards Siberia. On coming into the inhabited part of the country, they found many ſtraggling parties of Tartars in arms, ready to oppoſe them, and a number of boats upon the rivers, full of armed men. The King of the Tartars himſelf was on board one of theſe veſſels. This expedition

was

was of ſhort duration; and, in the iſſue, fully anſwered the expectation of the Ruſſians. I cannot omit a few particulars of the laſt action. The Tartars in the boats, being purſued by the Ruſſians, a battle enſued on the river Irtiſh. Yarmak obſerving the King's barge, ordered his crew to board her; which he endeavouring to do at the head of his men, jumped ſhort, fell into the river, and was drowned, to the great grief of all his followers. Thus fell poor Yarmak! Notwithſtanding this misfortune, the Ruſſians gained a complete victory. The brave King of the Tartars loſt his life in the action. His ſon, and the reſt of the royal family, were taken priſoners, and ſent to Moſco, where they were honourably received by the Czar, and treated according to their quality. The prince had an extenſive property granted him in Ruſſia, which the family enjoys to this day, together with the title of Sibirſky Czarevitz or Prince of Siberia; which, I believe, is a more generous treatment of the

the conquered than any of the mighty monarchs of Peru or Mexico, or any of their lineage, have experienced.

December 11th, we left Verchaturia, in deep ſnow. The cold was exceſſive, and the ſky clear.

Next day, we came to a large village, having a few of the Vogullitz Tartars in the neighbourhood; and, the 13th, arrived at the town of Epantſhin. From Verchaturia to this place the country is moſtly covered with woods. About the villages there are large plains, for corn or paſturage. The cattle are in good condition. The horſes, particularly, being of the Tartar breed, are larger, and better ſhaped, than ordinary, and fit for any uſe.

Epantſhin is but a ſmall place, fortified with a ditch and palliſades, and defended by a few ſoldiers in garriſon. This place is ſometimes alarmed with incurſions of the Tartars, called Koſſatſhy-Orda, and Kara-Kalpacks; but the Ruſſians have of late ſo fortified their frontiers, that theſe rovers appear

appear ſeldomer than formerly. Both theſe tribes are Mahometans, live always in tents, and ſpread themſelves, with their flocks, in the great deſert. Both are very numerous, and own ſubjection to different chiefs, whom they call Batteer, which ſignifies a hero. Theſe are choſen by themſelves, and are the moſt famous among them for their abilities in military exploits. They are at continual war with the Kalmucks, who inhabit along the Volga, and with all their other neighbours. They are not able to ſtand againſt regular troops; and, when attacked by them, retire into the wide deſert, with their families and cattle, whither none, but people accuſtomed to their manner of life, can follow them.

The country of the Kara-Kalpacks, or Black-Caps, ſo called from a kind of caps they commonly wear, turned up with black lamb-ſkins, lies to the ſouth-weſt, towards the Volga. That of the Koſſatſhy-Orda extends to the ſouth-eaſt, as far as the

the river Irtiſh. The courſe of this river I ſhall have occaſion to mention afterwards.

The 14th, we came to a pretty large town, called Tumen, ſituated upon the north bank of the river Tuma, from whence the place takes its name. The banks of the Tuma are high and ſteep. There is a very convenient wooden bridge at this place. The Tuma has its ſource far to the weſt, and, in its courſe, is augmented by the Tura, and ſeveral other rivers. It continues to run to the eaſt, till meeting with the Tobol, it loſes itſelf and name.

The country between Epantſhin and Tumen begins to be more open, and better peopled, than that weſtward of theſe places. For, beſides the Ruſſians, who make the greateſt part of the inhabitants, we meet with ſeveral villages inhabited by the deſcendents of the ancient Mahometans, who were natives of theſe places. Theſe Tartars ſubſiſt by agriculture, and paſs their lives without care or diſturbance, in the

free exerciſe of their religion, and other privileges.

Tumen is a pretty neat place, and well fortified. The ſtreets are ſpacious, and the houſes built in a ſtraight line. The adjacent country is covered with fine woods, interſperſed with villages, corn-fields, and paſturage; and proviſions of all kinds are very plentiful. The merchants of this place have a conſiderable trade in furs, particularly the ſkins of foxes and ſquirrels; which, indeed, are not ſo valuable here as they are to the eaſtward.

Early on the 15th, we left this place, keeping on our courſe along the banks of the Tuma, till we arrived at the river Tobol, which we croſſed, and proceeded along the eaſtern bank, through a fine country, and well peopled. Though the froſt ſtill continued ſtrong, it was not near ſo violent and piercing as about Solikamſky; which may proceed from the woods being cut down, and the country cultivated. On the other ſide of the river, indeed, the face

of

of the country appeared flat and moraſſy, abounding with tall and dark woods.

The 16th, about noon, we were in ſight of the city of Tobolſky, though diſtant from us about twenty Engliſh miles. It ſtands upon a very high bank of the Tobol. The walls are white, and the croſſes and cupolas of the churches guilded, and make a very fine appearance. About two o'clock we arrived ſafe at the city of Tobolſky, the capital of this mighty province, and the reſidence of the governour. We lodged in the broad-ſtreet, leading to the governour's palace, and the courts of juſtice.

We travelled between Tumen and Tobolſky, about two hundred and fifty verſt, in the ſpace of thirty hours. Sledges are the moſt ſimple and convenient machines for travelling on ſnow that can be imagined. And the perſon in the ſledge may either ſit, or lie along upon the couch, according to his inclination.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

### *Occurrences at Tobolſky, Obſervations on the Kalmucks, &c. and Journey continued to Tomſky.*

TOBOLSKY is ſituated in latitude fifty-eight degrees forty minutes north, at the conflux of the Irtiſh and Tobol. From this laſt the city has its name. Both theſe rivers are navigable for ſeveral hundred miles above this place. The Irtiſh, after receiving the Tobol, becomes a noble ſtream, and diſcharges itſelf into the Oby. This ſituation was choſen by the Ruſſians, both for its ſtrength and beauty. Formerly the Tartar princes had their abode at a place

place about thirty verſt ſouth from Tobolſky, which is now neglected and ruinous.

Tobolſky is fortified with a ſtrong brick-wall, having ſquare towers and baſtions at proper diſtances, and is well furniſhed with military ſtores. Within the town ſtand the governour's palace, courts of juſtice, ſeveral churches built of brick, particularly a large cathedral, and the palace of the archbiſhop. From the walls you have a very extenſive proſpect of a fine country, eſpecially to the ſouth. To the weſt the land is alſo flat, and overgrown with tall woods. The inhabitants are chiefly Ruſſians, of different profeſſions; many of them are merchants, and very rich, by the profitable trade they carry on to the borders of China, and many places of their own country.

Theſe live moſtly upon the hill. Under the hill, in the ſuburbs, along the banks of the river, are ſeveral large ſtreets, called the Tartar-ſtreets, occupied by the remains of the ancient inhabitants of theſe parts. Here, as at other places, theſe people enjoy the

the free exercise of their religion, and the privileges of trade. They resemble, in their persons, religion, language, and manners, the Tartars of Cazan and Astrachan. Their houses are very cleanly. They are very courteous to strangers, and esteemed honest; on which account they get great credit in their commercial affairs. Besides the fortification formerly mentioned about the town, the whole suburbs are surrounded with a ditch and pallisades.

When we were at Tobolsky, Siberia was superintended by Mr Petrof Solovoy, vice-governour, a person well acquainted with the business of the government, and a Captain of the guards. The former governour, Kneaz Gagarin, had incurred his Majesty's displeasure, and was recalled; and his successor, Kneaz Alexie Michaylovitz Cherkasky, a nobleman worthy of such an important trust, was not yet arrived.

As, in most other towns through which we passed, we found here many Swedish officers of distinction. Among others, Mon-

Monſieur Dittmar, formerly ſecretary to Charles XII. King of Sweden. He was a native of Livonia, and equally eſteemed for his probity and capacity. He was much reſpected by the late governour, who, indeed, was a friend to all theſe unfortunate gentlemen. They were allowed to walk about at large, a-hunting or fiſhing, and even permitted to travel to other places, to viſit their countrymen. For my part, I think the greateſt favour his Majeſty ſhewed theſe priſoners, was the cantoning them in theſe parts, where they may live well at a ſmall expence, and enjoy all the liberty that perſons in their circumſtances can expect.

I cannot but obſerve, that the Swediſh priſoners, diſperſed in moſt of the towns in this country, contributed not a little to the civilizing the inhabitants of theſe diſtant regions, as they were the means of introducing ſeveral uſeful arts, which were almoſt unknown before their arrival.

Many

Many of the officers, being gentlemen of liberal education, the better to ſupport their tedious capitivity, devoted their time to the ſtudy of the more agreeable and entertaining parts of ſcience, particularly muſic and painting; wherein ſome of them attained to great perfection. I was preſent at ſeveral of their concerts, and was not a little ſurpriſed to find ſuch harmony, and variety of muſical inſtruments, in this part of the world.

They ſometimes amuſed themſelves with teaching young gentlemen and ladies the French and German languages, muſic, dancing, and other ſimilar accompliſhments; whereby they gained many friends among the people of diſtinction; a circumſtance, to men in their ſituation, both honourable and uſeful.

In Tobolſky there are always about five or ſix thouſand regular troops, horſe and foot, beſides a number of irregulars. Theſe troops, added to the natural ſtrength of the place, effectually ſecure it from any attacks of the neighbouring Tartars.

The

The woods and fields about Tobolſky are ſtored with all kinds of game natural to the climate; ſuch as the coq-limoge, coq-bruiere, and gilinots; the laſt are about the ſize of a partridge, their fleſh is white, and very agreeable. There is another kind of theſe gilinots, ſomewhat larger, with rough feet, which, in the winter, turn white as a dove. Alſo the common partridge, which, on the approach of winter, flies off to more temperate climates; wood-cocks, a great variety of ſnipes, which fly off in autumn, after having hatched their young. As for water-fowl, no country in the world can produce ſuch numbers, and variety; they are alſo birds of paſſage. In my Perſian journal, I gave an account of the vaſt flocks of theſe fowls on the ſhores of the Caſpian Sea.

Here alſo you meet with ſeveral kinds of ſmall birds, about the ſize of a lark, particularly thoſe called ſnow-birds. They come to Siberia in vaſt flocks in autumn, and remain till the ſpring, when they diſappear.

Many of them are white as ſnow, ſome ſpeckled, and others all over brown. They are reckoned a very fine and delicious diſh.

I obſerved another very pretty bird, about the ſize of a thruſh, having beautiful red and yellow feathers in the wings and tail, with a tuft of brown feathers on its head, which it raiſes at pleaſure. Theſe are alſo birds of paſſage; and, as they breed no where in Europe or Aſia that I know of, perhaps both theſe and the ſnow-birds may come to Siberia from the northern parts of America. This conjecture will appear not improbable, when it is conſidered, that theſe birds are of a hardy nature, and the flight not ſo far as is generally imagined.

In the woods are various kinds of wild beaſts; ſuch as bears, wolves, lynxes, ſeveral ſorts of foxes, ſquirrels, ermins, ſables, martins, and roſio-macks, called feelfreſs by the Germans. The furs are better of their kinds than thoſe of any other country. The ermins commonly burrow

in

in the open fields, and are caught in traps baited with a bit of fleſh; this is done only in the winter, when they are altogether white, and the fur moſt valuable. In ſummer moſt of theſe animals turn brown, when they are not killed, becauſe, at this ſeaſon, the fur is of little uſe. There are alſo ottars in the rivers and lakes, whoſe ſkins yield a conſiderable profit. Indeed, furs of all ſorts, in this country, are very profitable. At preſent, few ſables are caught in this neighbourhood; it is ſaid they fly from ſmoke, which, perhaps, is partly true; yet I am apt to believe, that theſe poor animals are chaſed away towards the north, to the wild woods, on account of the high value of their ſkins.

The woods of Siberia abound alſo with veniſon of ſeveral ſorts; as elk, rain-deer, roe-buck, together with an incredible number of hares, which change their colour, from brown in ſummer to white in winter. The hares are generally caught by the country people in toils, more on account of

of their ſkins than their fleſh, of which they make but little uſe. The ſkins are bought by the merchants, and ſent, in great quantities to St Peterſburgh, and other ports, in order to be exported to England, Holland, and other countries, where they are chiefly manufactured into hats.

Having deſcribed the land animals, I ſhall now give ſome account of the fiſh. In my opinion, there are few countries in the world ſo well watered, with fine navigable rivers and lakes, as Siberia; and few rivers and lakes produce greater quantities, or more variety, of excellent freſh water fiſh, than thoſe in this country. For, beſides ſturgeon, white-fiſh, ſterlet, and others, to be found in the Volga, and the rivers in Ruſſia, there are ſeveral kinds peculiar to this part of the world; particularly the muchſoon, about the ſize of a large carp, and much eſteemed by perſons of delicate taſte.

Southward from Tobolſky the ſoil is fruitful, producing abundance of wheat, rye,

rye, barley, oats, and other grain. The cattle alſo are very numerous, and in winter are fed with hay. In a word, proviſions of all kinds are extremely reaſonable. From what I have ſaid, it will appear, that Tobolſky is by no means ſuch a diſagreeable place as is generally imagined. Whatever the opinions of mankind may be, it is the buſineſs of a traveller to deſcribe places and things without prejudice or partiality, and exhibit them fairly as they really appear. This principle it ſhall be my ſtudy to keep always in view.

Captain Tabar, a Swediſh officer, was at this time writing a hiſtory of Siberia. He was a gentleman very capable for ſuch a performance; and, if it ſhall ever be publiſhed, it cannot fail of giving great ſatisfaction to the curious.

Before I leave Tobolſky, it will not be improper to give a ſhort account of the famous river Irtiſh, that paſſes this place. It continues its courſe a little to the eaſtward of the north, in a ſtrong but ſmooth current,

Two of theſe ſcrolls were ſent, by order of the Emperor Peter the Firſt, to the Royal Academy at Paris. The Academy returned a tranſlation, which I ſaw in the rarity-chamber at St Peterſburgh. One of them contained a commiſſion to a lama or prieſt; and the other a form of prayer to the Deity. Whether this interpretation may be depended on, I ſhall not determine. The Tartars eſteem them all ſacred writings, as appears from the care they take to preſerve them. Perhaps they may contain ſome curious pieces of antiquity, particularly of ancient hiſtory. Above the Sedmy-palaty, towards the ſource of the Irtiſh, upon the hills and valleys, grows the beſt rhubarb in the world, without the leaſt culture.

Several days journey from the Palaces, down the Irtiſh, on the weſtern bank, ſtands an old tower named Kalbazinſhabaſhna, or the tower of Kalbazin. Below this is the lake Yamiſhoff, to the right, where the Ruſſians have built a ſmall fort, for

for the conveniency of making and gathering ſalt from that lake, great quantities whereof are made by the ſun; it is brought in barks down the river to Tobolſky, and other places. This fort created ſome jealouſy to the Kontayſha; he ſent an ambaſſador to the governour of Siberia, requeſting to have it demoliſhed; but this demand not being granted, the difference came to an open rupture, the event of which time muſt diſcover.

Deſcending farther, you meet with another ſettlement of the Ruſſians, called Shelezinſky, from a rivulet of that name in its neighbourhood. A little below Shelezinſky ſtands Omuſka, a conſiderable town which alſo derives its name from a river. Both theſe places are ſituated on the eaſtern bank of the Irtiſh. You now paſs ſome inconſiderable places before you arrive at Tara, a little town ſituated on the weſtern bank, on the road leading from Tobolſky to Tomſky, through a country

called Baraba, of which I ſhall give ſome account as we proceed to the eaſt.

Between Tara and Tobolſky are a few ſmall towns, and many villages, inhabited by Mahometan Tartars. And the country abounds with corn, cattle, and fine paſturage.

I have now pointed out the courſe of the Irtiſh till it reaches Tobolſky, and from thence till it empties itſelf into the river Oby. I have nothing further to remark concerning Tobolſky and the country around it, and ſhould therefore now purſue our journey to the eaſtward; but, before I leave this place, I imagine it will not be improper to ſubjoin a few more particulars relative to the Kontayſha, Prince of the Kalmucks, whom I formerly mentioned. I am the more inclined to do this, as I can entirely depend on my intelligence, having procured it from perſons who have been in that country, and ſeen this Prince; but particularly from an ingenious and penetrating gentleman, who fills a public office

in

in this place, and was employed in ſeveral meſſages to him from the late governour of Siberia.

The territories of this Prince are bounded by three of the moſt potent empires in the world; on the north by Ruſſia, by China on the eaſt, and by the country of the Great Mogul to the ſouth. From the two firſt he is ſeparated by deſert plains, and from the third by almoſt impaſſable mountains. To the ſouth-weſt his frontiers reach near to Bucharia. The Kontayſha is a very powerful Prince, and able to bring into the field, at a ſhort warning, an hundred thouſand horſemen, who are all of them able-bodied men, well mounted, and armed with bows and arrows, lances and ſabres. This is a greater number of horſe than any Prince that I know can muſter, except his Ruſſian Majeſty, and the Emperor of China. Theſe Tartars live in tents all the year, removing from place to place, as called by neceſſity or inclination. This is the moſt ancient and pleaſant manner of life.

life. It is entertaining to hear them commiſerate thoſe who are confined to one place of abode, and obliged to ſupport themſelves by labour, which they reckon the greateſt ſlavery.

The Kontayſha has always ſome thouſands of his ſubjects encamped near himſelf, who treat him with great veneration and reſpect. And, in juſtice to him, it muſt be confeſſed, that he is as attentive to the intereſts of his people; and as aſſiduous in the adminiſtration of juſtice, in particular, as if they were his own children.

The Kalmucks are not ſuch ſavage people as they are generally repreſented; for I am informed, a perſon may travel among them with greater ſafety, both to his perſon and effects, than in many other countries.

The Kontayſha received the deputies from the governour of Siberia, like ambaſſadors from foreign Princes, and treated them accordingly. This ſhows what high reſpect theſe Eaſtern Princes entertain for his

his Czariſh Majeſty, when the governour of Siberia is regarded as a ſovereign. The ceremony on theſe occaſions was as follows.

The deputy with his ſervants were admitted into the tent, where the Kontayſha ſat with his queen and ſeveral children about him. He deſired all of them to ſit down on carpets or mats; for the Kalmucks, like moſt Aſiatics, uſe no chairs. They were entertained with tea before dinner; and, after it, the Kontayſha diſmiſſed the deputy in a friendly manner, telling him, he would ſend for him next day to receive an anſwer to the governour's letter, which he punctually performed. This anſwer was expreſſed in very plain and conciſe terms. Theſe Tartars in general write with brevity and perſpicuity. I have ſeen ſeveral of their letters tranſlated, which pleaſed me extremely, as they contained no tedious preambles, nor diſguſting repetitions, which ſerve only to perplex the reader.

The

The Emperor of China was ſome time ago engaged in a war with the Kontayſha, about ſome frontier towns, of which the latter took poſſeſſion, and maintained his claim with a ſtrong army. The Emperor ſent againſt him an army of three hundred thouſand men, under the command of his fourteenth ſon, who is reckoned the beſt general of all his children. Notwithſtanding their ſuperiority in numbers, the Kontayſha defeated the Chineſe in ſeveral actions. The Emperor, at laſt, thought it beſt to accommodate the difference, and a peace was concluded, to the ſatisfaction of both parties.

It muſt be obſerved, that the Chineſe, being obliged to undertake a long and difficult march, through a deſert and barren country, lying weſtward of the long wall, being alſo incumbered with artillery and heavy carriages, containing proviſions for the whole army during their march, had their force greatly diminiſhed before they reached the enemy. The Kontayſha, on the

the other hand, having intelligence of the great army coming againſt him, waited patiently on his own frontiers till the enemy was within a few days march of his camp, when he ſent out detachments of light horſe, to ſet fire to the graſs, and lay waſte the country. He alſo diſtracted them, day and night, with repeated alarms, which, together with want of proviſions, obliged them to retire with conſiderable loſs.

This method of carrying on war, by waſting the country, is very ancient among the Tartars, and practiſed by all of them from the Danube eaſtward. This circumſtance renders them a dreadful enemy to regular troops, who muſt thereby be deprived of all ſubſiſtence, while the Tartars, having always many ſpare horſes to kill and eat, are at no loſs for proviſions.

I have only to add, that the Kontayſha muſt be the ſame prince who, in our European maps, is generally called the Great Cham of Tartary. As no Europeans travel through that country, theſe maps muſt be

be very erroneous. It is, however, to be expected, that the Ruſſians will in time make a more complete diſcovery of the eaſtern parts of Aſia.

Our baggage did not arrive at Tobolſky till the 23d of December. The people refreſhed themſelves till the 27th, when they again ſet out, taking the road along the Irtiſh to Tara. The ambaſſador and his retinue remained, to paſs the reſt of the holidays.

January 9th, 1720, we proceeded towards Tara. We paſſed through many Tartar villages, and at night lodged in one of their little huts, and warmed ourſelves at a good fire on the hearth. Theſe houſes conſiſt generally of one or two rooms, according to the ability of the landlord. Near to the hearth is fixed an iron-kettle, to dreſs the victuals. In one end of the apartment is placed a bench, about eighteen inches high, and ſix feet broad, covered with mats, or ſkins of wild beaſts, upon which

which all the family ſit by day, and ſleep in the night. The walls are built of wood and moſs, conſiſting of large beams, laid one above another, with a layer of moſs between every two beams. All the roofs are raiſed. A ſquare hole is cut out for a window, and, to ſupply the want of glaſs, a piece of ice is formed to fit the place exactly, which lets in a good light. Two or three pieces will laſt the whole winter. Theſe Tartars are very neat and cleanly, both in their perſons and houſes. They uſe no ſtoves, as the Ruſſians do. Near the houſe there is commonly a ſhade for the cattle.

We continued our journey along the banks of the Irtiſh, having the river to the right or left, as the road lay from one Tartar village to another.

The 15th, we reached Tara, a ſmall town, reckoned about five hundred verſt from Tobolſky. In all this road we did not meet with a Ruſſian village, except a

ſmall one near Tara. The country abounds with woods, corn-fields, and fine paſturage, which appeared ſufficiently from the quantities of hay, and the good condition of the cattle, though the face of the country was covered with deep ſnow. We found the air at Tara much milder than at any place ſince we left Kazan.

Tara is ſituated on the Irtiſh, and fortified with a deep ditch, ſtrong paliſades, and wooden towers, ſufficient to defend it againſt the ſudden attacks of the Tartars, called Koſſatſhy-orda, who inhabit weſtward of the Irtiſh, and are very troubleſome neighbours.

Here we laid in proviſions for our journey over the Baraba, which ſignifies, in the Tartar language, a marſhy plain. Its inhabitants are a mixture of different Tartar tribes, called Barabintzy, from the name of the country in which they live. They are a poor miſerable people, being treated as ſubjects both by the Emperor and the Contayſha,

ſha, and obliged to pay a tribute, in furs and ſkins of wild beaſts to each. They have no grain nor cattle of any kind, except a few rain-deer, and ſubſiſt by hunting and fiſhing. What fiſh they conſume not in the ſummer are dried and ſmoked for their winter proviſions. They are partly of the Mahometan, and partly of the Kalmuck religion; but this difference cauſes no diſputes.

It is generally reckoned, that more robberies are committed in Baraba than in any country on the road to China; not by the natives, for they are very honeſt and hoſpitable, but by the Kalmucks, who come to collect tribute for the Kontayſha, who ſometimes pick up travellers, and carry them off, with all their effects. It was ſaid, that a ſtrong party of them, having intelligence that the ambaſſador was to paſs that way, waited to intercept him; on which account, he took thirty dragoons and ſome Coſſacks, from the garriſon of Tobolſky, to eſcort him to Tomſky; which

was

was a ſufficient guard againſt any robbers who might attack us; and he knew the Kontayſha was too polite a prince to authoriſe his ſubjects to moleſt any foreign miniſter who had done him no injury, notwithſtanding the differences that ſubſiſted between him and his Czariſh Majeſty.

Our baggage having waited at Tara till our arrival, we left that place on the 18th; and next day came to a large Ruſſian village, ſixty verſt from Tara, and the laſt inhabited by Ruſſians, till you paſs the Baraba, and come to the river Oby.

In the places through which we paſſed, the ambaſſador ſent for all the hunters and ſportſmen, that he might inquire what kinds of game and wild beaſts were in their neighbourhood. Hunting is the employment of moſt of the young fellows in this country, and is very profitable, as they ſell the furs to great advantage. We found that this place produced great plenty, both of game and wild beaſts, but few ſables. In the ſpring, a number of elks and ſtags come hither,

hither, from the ſouth; many of which are killed by the inhabitants, both on account of their fleſh and their hides. What of the fleſh is not conſumed freſh, they ſalt. The hides are very large, and are dreſſed into excellent buff. The huntſman, having found the track of a ſtag upon the ſnow, purſues it upon his ſnow ſhoes, with his bow and arrows, and little dog, till the animal is quite fatigued; for, the ſnow on the ſurface being melted by the heat of the ſun, and congealed at night by the froſt, but not ſtrong enough to bear the weight of ſuch an animal, he ſinks deep at every ſtep, and the ſharp ice cuts his ancles, and lames him; ſo that he becomes an eaſy prey to the hunter.

One of theſe hunters told me the following ſtory, which was confirmed by ſeveral of his neighbours: That, in the year 1713, in the month of March, being out a hunting, he diſcovered the tract of a ſtag, which he purſued; at overtaking the animal, he was ſomewhat ſtartled, on obſerving it had only

only one horn, ſtuck in the middle of its forehead. Being near this village, he drove it home, and ſhowed it, to the great admiration of the ſpectators. He afterwards killed it, and eat the fleſh, and ſold the horn to a comb-maker in the town of Tara for ten alteens, about fifteen pence Sterling. I inquired carefully about the ſhape and ſize of this unicorn, as I ſhall call it, and was told it exactly reſembled a ſtag. The horn was of a browniſh colour, about one archeen, or twenty-eight inches long, and twiſted from the root till within a finger's length of the top, where it was divided, like a fork, into two points very ſharp.

The 19th, we entered the Baraba, and continued travelling through it for ten days, when we came to a large Ruſſian village called Tzauſky Oſtrogue, from a rivulet of that name, which diſcharges itſelf into the Oby, a little diſtance eaſtward from this place. Here is a ſmall fort, ſurrounded with a ditch and palliſades, mount-

ed

ed with a few cannon, and garriſoned by ſome militia of the country, in order to prevent the incurſions of the Kalmucks. We ſtaid a day at this place, to refreſh ourſelves, and having changed horſes, proceeded towards Tomſky.

Baraba is really what its name ſignifies, an extenſive marſhy plain. It is generally full of lakes, and marſhy grounds, overgrown with tall woods of aſpin, alder, willows, and other aquatics; particularly many large birch-trees, having their bark as white and ſmooth as paper. The lakes abound with various kinds of fiſhes, ſuch as pikes, perches, breams, eels, and particularly a fiſh called karraſs, of an uncommon bigneſs, and very fat. Theſe the inhabitants dry, in ſummer, for winter proviſions, which are all the food to be found among them. I have eat of it often, and thought it not diſagreeable. In winter, they uſe melted ſnow for water. They are very hoſpitable; and deſire nothing, in return

of

of their civilities, but a little tobacco to ſmoke, and a dram of brandy, of which they are very fond. The dreſs, both of men and women, conſiſts of long coats of ſheep-ſkins, which they get from the Ruſſians and Kalmucks, in exchange for more valuable furs. As they wear no other apparel, nor even ſhirts, they are very naſty. Their huts are moſt miſerable habitations, and ſunk about one-half under ground. We were glad, however, to find them, as a baiting place, in ſuch a cold ſeaſon.

The Barabintzy, like moſt of the ancient natives of Siberia, have many conjurers among them, whom they call Shamans, and ſometimes prieſts. Many of the female ſex alſo aſſume this character. The ſhamans are held in great eſteem by the people; they pretend to correſpondence with the ſhaytan, or devil; by whom, they ſay, they are informed of all paſt and future events, at any diſtance of time or place. Our ambaſſador reſolved to inquire ſtrictly into

into the truth of many ſtrange ſtories, generally believed, concerning the ſhamans, and ſent for all of fame in that way in the places through which we paſſed.

In Baraba, we went to viſit a famous woman of this character. When we entered her houſe, ſhe continued buſy about her domeſtic affairs, without almoſt taking any notice of her gueſts. However, after ſhe had ſmoked a pipe of tobacco, and drunk a dram of brandy, ſhe began to be more cheerful. Our people aſked her ſome trifling queſtions about their friends; but ſhe pretended to be quite ignorant, till ſhe got more tobacco, and ſome inconſiderable preſents, when ſhe began to collect her conjuring tools. Firſt, ſhe brought the ſhaytan; which is nothing but a piece of wood, wherein is cut ſomething reſembling a human head, adorned with many ſilk and woollen rags, of various colours; then a ſmall drum, about a foot diameter, to which were fixed many braſs and iron rings, and

hung round alſo with rags. She now began a diſmal tune, keeping time with the drum, which ſhe beat with a ſtick for that purpoſe. Several of her neighbours, whom ſhe had previouſly called to her aſſiſtance, joined in the chorus. During this ſcene, which laſted about a quarter of an hour, ſhe kept the ſhaytan, or image, cloſe by herſelf, ſtuck up in a corner. The charm being now finiſhed, ſhe deſired us to put our queſtions. Her anſwers were delivered very artfully, and with as much obſcurity and ambiguity, as they could have been given by any oracle. She was a young woman, and very handſome.

On the 29th of January, we reached the Oby, which we croſſed on the ice, and entered a country pretty well inhabited by Ruſſians, where we found proviſions, and freſh horſes, as often as we wanted them. The country is generally covered with woods, except about the villages, where are fine corn-fields, and good paſture grounds. Our courſe lay a little to

the

the northward of the eaſt of from Tzauſky Oſtrogue.

February 4th, we arrived ſafe at the town of Tomſky, ſo called from the noble river Tomm, upon the eaſtern bank of which it ſtands.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

### *Occurrences at Tomſky; obſervations on the Tzulimm Tartars, &c. and journey continued to Elimſky.*

THE citadel of Tomſky is ſituated on an eminence, and contains the commandant's houſe, public offices, and barracks for the garriſon. The fortifications, like moſt others in this country, are of wood. The town ſtands under the hill, along the banks of the river Tomm. The country about this place is pleaſant and fruitful. From the top of the hill you have a very extenſive view every way, except

cept to the ſouth, where it is interrupted by hills. Beyond theſe hills there is a large, dry, and open plain, which ſtretches a great way ſouthward.

About eight or ten days journey from Tomſky, in this plain, are found many tombs, and burying places of ancient heroes, who, in all probability, fell in battle. Theſe tombs are eaſily diſtinguiſhed by the mounds of earth and ſtones raiſed upon them. When, or by whom theſe battles were fought, ſo far to the northward, is uncertain. I was informed by the Tartars in the Baraba, that Tamerlane, or Timyr-ack-ſack, as they call him, had many engagements in that country with the Kalmucks, whom he in vain endeavoured to conquer. Many perſons go from Tomſky and other parts every ſummer to theſe graves, which they dig up, and find, among the aſhes of the dead, conſiderable quantities of gold, ſilver, braſs, and ſome precious ſtones; but particularly hilts of ſwords and armour. They find alſo ornaments of

ſaddles

ſaddles and bridles, and other trappings for horſes; and even the bones of horſes, and ſometimes thoſe of elephants. Whence it appears, that when any general or perſon of diſtinction was interred, all his arms, his favourite horſe and ſervant, were buried with him in the ſame grave: This cuſtom prevails to this day among the Kalmucks and other Tartars, and ſeems to be of great antiquity. It appears from the number of graves, that many thouſands muſt have fallen on theſe plains; for the people have continued to dig for ſuch treaſure many years, and ſtill find it unexhauſted. They are ſometimes indeed interrupted, and robbed of all their booty, by parties of the Kalmucks, who abhor the diſturbing the aſhes of the dead.

I have ſeen ſeveral pieces of armour, and other curioſities, that were dug out of theſe tombs, particularly an armed man on horſeback, caſt in braſs, of no mean deſign nor workmanſhip; alſo figures of deer, caſt in pure gold, which were ſplit through the

the middle, and had ſome ſmall holes in them, as intended for ornaments to a quiver, or the furniture of a horſe.

While we were at Tomſky, one of theſe grave-diggers told me, that once they lighted on an arched vault, where they found the remains of a man, with his bow, arrows, lance, and other arms, lying together on a ſilver table. On touching the body it fell to duſt. The value of the table and arms was very conſiderable.

The country about the ſource of the river Tomm, near which theſe tombs are, is very fruitful and pleaſant. At the ſource of the Tomm the Ruſſians have a ſmall town called Kuznetſky. This river is formed by the Kondoma, and many leſſer rivers; all which run to the north.

In the hills above Kuznetſky, there had lately been diſcovered rich mines of copper, and ſome of ſilver; which, ſince I was in this country, have been greatly improved.

On the hills, and in the woods near this place, are many ſorts of wild beaſts, particularly

cularly the urus, or uhr-ox, one of the fierceſt animals the world produces, and exceeding, in ſize and ſtrength, all the horned ſpecies. Their force and agility is ſuch, that no wolf, bear, nor tiger, dare to engage with them. Theſe animals are found in the woods of Poland, and ſome other parts of Europe. As they are well known I need not deſcribe them.

In the ſame woods is found another ſpecies of oxen, called bubul by the Tartars; it is not ſo big as the urus; its body and limbs are very handſome; it has a high ſhoulder and a flowing tail, with long hair growing from the rump to the extremity, like that of a horſe. Thoſe I ſaw were tame, and as tractable as other cattle. Here are alſo wild aſſes. I have ſeen many of their ſkins. They have, in all reſpects, the head, tail, and hoofs of an ordinary aſs; but their hair is waved, white and brown, like that of a tiger.

There is, beſides, a number of wild horſes, of a cheſnut-colour, which cannot be tamed,

tamed, though they are catched when foals. Theſe horſes differ nothing from the common kind in ſhape, but are the moſt watchful creatures alive. One of them waits always on the heights to give warning to the reſt, and, upon the leaſt approach of danger, runs to the herd, making all the noiſe it can; upon which all of them fly away, like ſo many deer. The ſtallion drives up the rear, neighing, biting and kicking thoſe who do not run faſt enough. Notwithſtanding this wonderful ſagacity, theſe animals are often ſurpriſed by the Kalmucks, who ride in among them, well mounted on ſwift horſes, and kill them with broad lances. Their fleſh they eſteem excellent food, and uſe their ſkins to ſleep upon inſtead of couches. Theſe are the animals peculiar to this part of the country; and, beſides theſe, there are many more common to this place with the reſt of Siberia.

The river Tomm, having paſſed Kuznetſky, Tomſky, and ſeveral other towns

of leſs note, empties itſelf into the Oby, at a place called Nikolſky, about an hundred verſt below Tomſky, in a country overgrown with thick woods. Here the Tomm loſes its name, and makes a great addition to the Oby, which now commences a mighty ſtream.

The Tomm abounds with variety of fine fiſh; ſuch as ſturgeon, ſterlet, muchſoon, and the largeſt and beſt quabs, called in French guion, that I have any where ſeen. The method of catching theſe fiſh is by planting pales acroſs the river, in which there is left one narrow opening for the fiſhes to paſs through. Above this opening a hole is cut in the ice, and near it is placed a fire upon ſome ſtones laid for that purpoſe. The fiſh, on ſeeing the light of the fire, ſtops a moment in its paſſage; and, at this inſtant, the fiſherman ſtrikes it with a ſpear through the hole in the ice. This exerciſe requires great quickneſs, for the fiſh is gone in a trice. I killed ſeveral of them myſelf.

Thus,

Thus, having made a ſhort excurſion up and down the Tomm, and given a brief deſcription of the country adjacent, I return again to Tomſky.

Tomſky is a good market for furs of all ſorts; but particularly of ſables, black and red foxes, ermins, and ſquirrels. The ſquirrels called Teleutſky, from the name of the diſtrict where they are caught, are reckoned the beſt of that ſpecies. They have a blackiſh ſtripe down their back.

Beſides the common ſquirrel, there is another ſpecies found here called the flying ſquirrel. There is little peculiar in its ſhape or ſize, only it has, at the upper joint of the thigh of the fore-leg, a ſmall membrane, ſtretching to the ſhoulder, ſomewhat like the wing of a bat, which it extends at pleaſure, and is thereby enabled to ſpring much farther, from tree to tree, than it could do without the help of theſe wings. Both the ermins and ſquirrels are caught only in winter, becauſe in ſummer their

their fur is quite brown, ſhort, and of little uſe.

We waited ſome days at Tomſky for the arrival of our baggage. Here we found ſeveral Swediſh officers, who had good quarters in a plentiful though diſtant place. After our people had refreſhed themſelves for two days, they ſet out again on the road to Yeniſeyſky.

During our abode in Tomſky, we diverted ourſelves with fiſhing and hunting. We were preſent alſo at ſeveral concerts of muſic, performed by the Swediſh officers, at Mr Koſloff's, commandant of the place. Theſe gentlemen were not leſs expert in touching their inſtruments than their companions at Tobolſky. Mr Koſloff is a good-natured and chearful gentleman, and treats theſe officers with great humanity. They had along with them a Swediſh parſon, Mr Veſtadius, a man of genius and learning.

The 9th, we were entertained at the commandant's, where were aſſembled ſome hundreds

hundreds of his Coſſacks, or light horſe, armed with bows and arrows. After going through their uſual exerciſe, they ſhowed their dexterity in ſhooting on horſeback at full ſpeed. They erected a pole for a mark in an open field, and paſſing it, at full gallop, let fly their arrows, and ſoon ſplit it all to ſhivers.

The 12th, about midnight, we went into our ſledges, and ſet out on our journey towards Yeniſeyſky. For the two following days, we had tolerably good roads, lying through a pretty fine country, inhabited by Ruſſians. The villages are but thinly ſcattered, yet ſufficiently near one another to afford proviſions and freſh horſes.

On the 14th, we reached a large navigable river, called Tzulimm. We went up this river upon the ice. We met with neither houſe nor inhabitant for the ſpace of ſix days. We could get no freſh horſes, and were obliged to carry both proviſions and forage along with us, which made this part of the road very tedious. During all this

this time, we had no where to warm ourſelves, or dreſs our victuals, but in the thick overgrown woods, which occupy both ſides of the river. There is great plenty of fallen trees in theſe woods, of which we made large fires. The trees are chiefly pitch fir, riſing like a pyramid, with long ſpreading branches hanging to the ground, which render theſe woods almoſt impaſſable to man or beaſt. We frequently ſet fire to the moſs and dried fibres of theſe firs. In the ſpace of a minute the fire mounts to the top of the tree, and has a very pretty effect. The kindling ſo many fires warmed all the air around.

In ſummer, the banks of this river are inhabited by a tribe of Tartars, called by the Ruſſians Tzulimmzy, from the name of the river, who live by fiſhing and hunting. We found ſeveral of their empty huts as we went along. In autumn, theſe people retire from this inhoſpitable place towards the ſouth, near to towns and villages, where they can find ſubſiſtence.

The

The 20th, we arrived at a Ruſſian village, called Meletſky Oſtrogue, where we ſtaid a day to refreſh ourſelves and horſes. In the neighbourhood of this place, we found many huts of the Tzulimm Tartars, who ſeem to be a different race from all of that name I have yet mentioned. Their complexion indeed is ſwarthy, like that of moſt of the other deſcendents of the ancient natives of Siberia; but I have ſeen many of them having white ſpots on their ſkins, from head to foot, of various figures and ſizes. Many imagine theſe ſpots natural to the people; but I am rather inclined to believe they proceed from their conſtant diet of fiſh and other animal food, without bread. This, of courſe, creates a ſcorbutic habit of body, which often breaks out in infants; and the ſcars falling off, leave that part of the ſkin as if it had been ſcalded, which never recovers its natural colour. I have however ſeen ſeveral children with theſe ſpots, who ſeemed healthy.

The

The Tzulimms, like other Tartars, live in huts half-ſunk under ground. They have a fire in the middle, with a hole at the top to let out the ſmoke, and benches round the fire, to ſit or lie upon. This ſeems to be the common method of living among all the northern nations, from Lapland, eaſtward, to the Japaneſe ocean.

The Tzulimms ſpeak a barbarous language, compoſed of words from many other languages. Some of our people, who ſpoke Turkiſh, told me, they had many Arabic words, which they underſtood. They are poor, miſerable, and ignorant heathens. The archbiſhop of Tobolſky, in perſon, came lately hither, and baptiſed ſome hundreds of them, who were inclined to embrace the Chriſtian faith. As they are a well diſpoſed and harmleſs people, probably in a ſhort time they may be all converted.

The river Tzulimm has its ſource about three hundred verſt above Meletſky Oſtrogue; from this place it continues its courſe

to

to the northward, till it meets with the river Oby, at a place called Shabannſky Oſtrogue. Oſtrogue, in the Ruſſian language, ſignifies a ſtrong palliſade, incloſing a certain piece of ground. On the firſt ſettlements made by the Ruſſians in theſe parts, ſuch incloſures were neceſſary to prevent any ſurpriſe from the inhabitants.

The 21ſt, early in the morning, we left Meletſky, and travelled through thick woods, along narrow roads. Next day, we came to a ſmall Ruſſian village, called Melay-keat; where we found our baggage, for the firſt time ſince we quitted Tomſky. Near this place the river Keat has its ſource; and runs towards the weſt, till it meets with the Oby. Having changed horſes at Melay-keat, we left our baggage, and proceeded on our journey.

On the evening of the 22d, we came to a zimovey, where we halted a little, to refreſh ourſelves and bait our horſes. A zimovey is a houſe or two, built in a place at a great diſtance from any town or village,

for the convenience of travellers; and is a ſort of inn, where you generally find a warm room, freſh bread, and a wholeſome and agreeable liquor, called quaſs, made of malt, or rye-meal, ſteeped and fermented; with hay and oats, at eaſy rates.

From this place we travelled to Beloy, a large village, where we changed horſes, and proceeded. From hence to Yeniſeyſky the country is well cultivated. Upon the road are many Ruſs villages, where we got freſh horſes as often as we pleaſed, without halting ten minutes. Thus we continued travelling, day and night, till we arrived, on the 23d, at the town of Yeniſeyſky, where we had a friendly reception, and good entertainment, from the commandant, Mr Becklimiſhof, who had come ſome miles from town to meet his old friend the ambaſſador.

Here I found Mr Kanbar Nikititz Aikinfiof, with whom I got acquainted at Cazan, while we wintered there, in the journey to Perſia. Some croſs accident had been the occaſion of his coming to this place. He enjoyed

enjoyed full liberty to walk about at pleaſure. He underſtood ſeveral languages, was well acquainted with hiſtory, and a chearful good natured companion.

Here we paſſed the holidays called Maſſlapitza, or the Carnaval, which is held on the week before Lent. In the mean time our carriages arrived, which were deſpatched again as ſoon as poſſible.

The town of Yeniſeyſky is pleaſantly ſituated in a plain, on the weſtern bank of the river Yeniſey, from which the town takes its name. It is a large and populous place, fenced with a ditch, palliſades, and wooden towers. Here is a good market for furs of all ſorts; particularly of the animals called pieſſy, which are of two colours, white and dove colour. Theſe creatures are caught far to the northward of this place. They are nearly of the ſhape and ſize of a fox; having a ſhort buſhy tail, and a thick ſoft downy fur, very light and warm, which is much eſteemed by the great men in the northern parts of China; and,

by

by them, made chiefly into cuſhions, on which they ſit in winter.

Beſides the above, there is here another creature called roſſomack in Ruſs, and feelfreſs by the Germans; becauſe they imagine it eats a great deal more in proportion than other animals. I have ſeen ſeveral of them alive. They are very fierce, and about the ſhape and ſize of a badger; the neck, back, and tail, are black, but about the belly the hair is of a browniſh colour. The blacker they are the more valuable. The ſkin being thick, is only uſed in caps and muffs. Alſo elks, rain-deer, and ſtags. The latter retire to the ſouth on the approach of winter, and return in the ſpring. Here are likewiſe an incredible number of white hares, which perhaps I may mention afterwards.

I muſt not omit the black foxes, which are in great abundance about Yenifeyſky. Their fur is reckoned the moſt beautiful of any kind; it is even preferred to the ſable, with reſpect to lightneſs and warmneſs.

neſs. I ſaw here one of their ſkins valued at five hundred crowns, and ſome of them far exceed this ſum.

Before I leave this place, I ſhall give a ſhort deſcription of the courſe of the famous river Yeniſey, according to the beſt information I could procure. It riſes in a hilly country, at a great diſtance ſouthward from this place; being joined by many rivers in its courſe, it grows into a mighty ſtream, and is, at Yeniſeyſky, full as large as the Volga. It runs the longeſt courſe of any river on this vaſt continent. The firſt town, of any note, in coming down this river, is Kraſſno-yarr, which ſtands on the weſtern bank. It is a place of conſiderable trade, particularly in furs. From this place, along the banks, are many villages, till the Yeniſey meets the lower Tonguſta, a large river, coming from the eaſt, a few verſt above Yeniſeyſky. Below this place, there are many inconſiderable ſettlements, till you come to Mangaſeyſky, a town famous for furs, and the ſhrine

ſhrine of an illuſtrious ſaint, called Vaſſile Mangaſeyſky, much frequented by the devout people in theſe parts.

Above this place, the Yeniſey receives the Podkamena-tonguſta, a large river, running from the ſouth-eaſt; and at Mangaſeyſky, it meets another river, called Turochanſky, coming from the weſt. The Yeniſey now continues its courſe, almoſt due north, till it diſcharges itſelf into the ocean. This river abounds with variety of excellent fiſh, ſuch as I have already mentioned, but in leſſer quantities.

The 27th, we left Yeniſeyſky, and travelled about eight or ten verſt along the ſouth bank of the river, when we came to thick and tall woods, which obliged us to leave the land, and march along the river on the ice, which was very uneven. This roughneſs is cauſed by the froſt ſetting in about autumn, with a ſtrong weſterly wind, which drives up great cakes of ice upon one another, in ſome places four or five feet high. If the froſt happens to begin

in

in calm weather, the ice is very ſmooth, and eaſy for ſledges.

The 28th, we proceeded along the Yeniſey, meeting ſometimes with villages. The rigour of the cold was much abated, but the face of winter appeared every where, without the leaſt ſign of ſpring. At evening, we entered the river Tonguſta, which we found as rough as the former; but, as both the banks were overgrown with thick woods, we were obliged to keep along the ice.

Next day, we ſtill proceeded along the river, in blowing weather and driving ſnow.

The 1ſt of March, we overtook our baggage, which we paſſed; it being thought more convenient, both in order to procure lodging and freſh horſes, that the heavy carriages ſhould travel behind.

We continued our journey for ſeveral days along the Tonguſta. We found, now and then, little villages, or ſingle houſes, on the banks. One day, we chanced to meet a prodigious flock of hares, all as white

white as the ſnow on which they walked. I ſpeak within compaſs, when I ſay there were above five or ſix hundred of them. They were coming down the river, very deliberately, on a ſmall path of their own making, cloſe to the beaten road. As ſoon as they ſaw us, all of them run into the woods, without ſeeming much frightened. I am informed that theſe hares travel to the ſouth, in much greater flocks than this, every ſpring, and return in autumn, when the rivers are frozen, and the ſnow falls. In moſt of the villages we found plenty of this ſort of veniſon; the inhabitants, however, value it but little; for they catch theſe hares more on account of their ſkins, of which they make conſiderable profits, than their fleſh.

The Tonguſy, ſo called from the name of the river, who live along its banks, are the poſterity of the ancient inhabitants of Siberia, and differ in language, manners, and dreſs, and even in their perſons and ſtature, from all the other tribes of theſe people

people I have had occaſion to ſee. They have no houſes, where they remain for any time, but range through the woods, and along rivers, at pleaſure; and, wherever they come, they erect a few ſpars, inclining to one another at the top; theſe they cover with pieces of birchen bark, ſewed together, leaving a hole at the top to let out the ſmoke. The fire is placed in the middle. They are very civil and tractable, and like to ſmoke tobacco, and drink brandy. About their huts they have generally a good ſtock of rain-deer, in which all their wealth conſiſts.

The men are tall and able-bodied, brave, and very honeſt. The women are of a middle ſize, and virtuous. I have ſeen many of the men with oval figures, like wreaths, on their foreheads and chins; and ſometimes a figure reſembling the branch of a tree, reaching from the corner of the eye to the mouth. Theſe are made in their infancy, by pricking the parts with a needle, and rubbing them with charcoal,

the marks whereof remain as long as the perſon lives. Their complexion is ſwarthy. Their faces are not ſo flat as thoſe of the Kalmucks, but their countenances more open. They are altogether unacquainted with any kind of literature, and worſhip the ſun and moon. They have many ſhamans among them, who differ little from thoſe I formerly deſcribed. I was told of others, whoſe abilities in fortune-telling far exceeded thoſe of the ſhamans at this place, but they lived far northward. They cannot bear to ſleep in a warm room, but retire to their huts, and lie about the fire, on ſkins of wild beaſts. It is ſurpriſing how theſe creatures can ſuffer the very piercing cold in theſe parts.

The women are dreſſed in a fur-gown, reaching below the knee, and tied about the waiſt with a girdle. This girdle is about three inches broad, made of deer's-ſkin, having the hair curiouſly ſtitched down and ornamented; to which is faſtened, at each ſide, an iron ring, that ſerves to

carry

carry a tobacco-pipe, and other trinkets of ſmall value. Their gowns are alſo ſtitched down the breaſt, and about the neck. Their long black hair is plaited, and tied about their heads, above which they wear a ſmall fur-cap, which is becoming enough. Some of them have ſmall ear-rings. Their feet are dreſſed in buſkins, made of deer-ſkins, which reach to the knee, and are tied about the ancle with a thong of leather.

The dreſs of the men is very ſimple, and fit for action. It conſiſts of a ſhort jacket, with narrow ſleeves, made of deer's-ſkin, having the fur outward; trouſers and hoſe of the ſame kind of ſkin, both of one piece, and tight to the limbs. They have, beſides, a piece of fur, that covers the breaſt and ſtomach, which is hung about the neck with a thong of leather. This, for the moſt part, is neatly ſtitched and ornamented by their wives. Round their heads they have a ruff, made of the tails of ſquirrels, to preſerve the tips of the ears from the cold. There is nothing on the crown, but the hair

hair ſmoothed, which hangs in a long plaited lock behind their backs.

Their arms are, a bow, and ſeveral ſorts of arrows, according to the different kinds of game they intend to hunt. The arrows are carried, in a quiver, on their backs, and the bow always in their left hand. Beſides theſe, they have a ſhort lance, and a little hatchet. Thus accoutred, they are not afraid to attack the fierceſt creature in the woods, even the ſtrongeſt bear; for they are ſtout men, and dextrous archers. In winter, which is the ſeaſon for hunting wild beaſts, they travel on what are called ſnow-ſhoes, without which it would be impoſſible to make their way through the deep ſnow. Theſe are made of a very thin piece of light wood, about five feet long, and five or ſix inches broad, inclining to a point before, and ſquare behind. In the middle is fixed a thong, through which the feet are put. On theſe ſhoes a perſon may walk ſafely over the deepeſt ſnow; for a man's weight will not ſink

ſink them above an inch. Theſe, however, can only be uſed on plains. They have a different kind for aſcending hills, with the ſkins of ſeals glued to the boards, having the hair inclined backwards, which prevents the ſliding of the ſhoes, ſo that they can aſcend a hill very eaſily; and, in deſcending, they ſlide downwards at a great rate.

The nation of the Tonguſy was very numerous, but is of late much diminiſhed by the ſmall-pox. It is remarkable, that they knew nothing of this diſtemper till the Ruſſians arrived among them. They are ſo much afraid of this diſeaſe, that, if any one of a family is ſeized with it, the reſt immediately make the patient a little hut, and ſet by him ſome water and victuals; then, packing up every thing, they march off to the windward, each carrying an earthen pot, with burning coals in it, and making a dreadful lamentation as they go along. They never reviſit the ſick till they think the danger paſt. If the perſon

ſon dies, they place him on a branch of a tree, to which he is tied with ſtrong wythes, to prevent his falling.

When they go a-hunting into the woods, they carry with them no proviſions, but depend entirely on what they are to catch. They eat every animal that comes in their way, even a bear, fox, or wolf. The ſquirrels are reckoned delicate food; but the ermins have ſuch a ſtrong rank taſte and ſmell, that nothing but ſtarving can oblige them to eat their fleſh. When a Tonguſe kills an elk or deer, he never moves from the place till he has eat it up, unleſs he happens to be near his family; in which caſe he carries part of it home. He is never at a loſs for fire, having always a tinder-box about him. If this ſhould happen to be wanting, he kindles a fire, by rubbing two pieces of wood againſt each other. They eat nothing raw, but in great extremity.

The ſables are not caught in the ſame manner as other animals. The fur is ſo tender,

tender, that the leaſt mark of an arrow, or ruffling of the hair, ſpoils the ſale of the ſkin. In hunting them they only uſe a little dog and a net. When a hunter finds the track of a ſable upon the ſnow, he follows it perhaps for two or three days, till the poor animal, quite tired, takes refuge in ſome tall tree; for it can climb like a cat; the hunter then ſpreads his net around the tree, and makes a fire; the ſable, unable to endure the ſmoke, immediately deſcends, and is caught in the net. I have been told by ſome of theſe hunters, that, when hard pinched with hunger on ſuch long chaces, they take two thin boards, one of which they apply to the pit of the ſtomach, and the other to the back oppoſite to it; the extremities of theſe boards are tied with cords, which are drawn tighter by degrees, and prevent their feeling the cravings of hunger.

Although I have obſerved, that the Tonguſy, in general, worſhip the ſun and moon, there are many exceptions to this obſer-

obſervation. I have found intelligent people among them, who believed there was a being ſuperior to both ſun and moon, and who created them and all the world.

I ſhall only remark farther, that, from all the accounts I have heard and read of the natives of Canada, there is no nation in the world which they ſo much reſemble as the Tonguſians. The diſtance between them is not ſo great as is commonly imagined.

The 4th of March, we came to a little monaſtery, called Troytza, dedicated to the Holy Trinity; where we found about half a dozen monks, who gave us an hoſpitable reception in their cells, and furniſhed us with proviſions and freſh horſes. The monaſtery ſtands upon the north ſide of the river, on a very pleaſant though ſolitary bank, encompaſſed with woods, corn-fields, and good paſturage. Moſt of the villages are on the north ſide of the river, as it is higher than the ſouth ſide.

The ſame day, we proceeded on our journey along the river. We met with, daily,

great

great flocks of hares in their progreſs to the weſtward, and many Tonguſians in their huts. It is to be obſerved, that, from this river northward to the Frozen Ocean, there are no inhabitants, except a few Tonguſians, on the banks of the great rivers; the whole of this moſt extenſive country being overgrown with dark impenetrable woods. The ſoil along the banks of this river is good, and produces wheat, barley, rye, and oats. The method taken by the inhabitants to deſtroy the large fir-trees is, to cut off a ring of bark from the trunk, about a foot broad, which prevents the aſcending of the ſap, and the tree withers in a few years. This prepares it for being burnt in a dry ſeaſon; by which means the ground is both cleared of the wood, and manured by the aſhes, without much labour.

The Ruſſians obſerve, that, where the ſort of fir commonly called the Scotch fir, grows, the ground never fails of producing corn; but it is not ſo where the pitch, or any other kind of fir, prevails.

The 7th, we came to the head of the Tonguſky, which is formed by the conflux of two other rivers, the Angara, and the Elimm. The firſt iſſues from the great Baykall lake, and runs towards the weſt, till it meets the Tonguſky, when it loſes its name. We left the Angara and Tonguſky on our right hand, and proceeded along the Elimm, which we found much ſmoother than the Tonguſky. The Elimm is a conſiderably large and navigable river. The banks on the ſouth ſide are very high, and covered with rugged rocks, overgrown with woods; but, to the north, you meet with ſeveral villages, corn-fields, and paſturage.

We kept on our courſe up the Elimm, a little to the northward of the eaſt, till the 9th, when we arrived at the town of Elimſky, ſo called from the name of the river, which ſtands in a narrow valley, on the ſouth ſide of the river, encompaſſed with high hills, and rocks covered with woods. This place is but ſmall, and is only conſiderable,

derable, as it ſtands on the road to the eaſtern parts of Siberia; for travellers to China generally take to the ſouth-eaſt, towards Irkutſky; and thoſe who travel to Yakutſky and Kamtzatſky, to the north-eaſt.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

*Obſervations on Yakutſky and Kamtxatſky, &c. Journey continued to Irkutſky, and Occurrences there, &c.*

AT Elimſky I met with General Kanifer. He was adjutant general to Charles XII. of Sweden, and much eſteemed by that great warrior, for his military exploits. Kanifer was a native of Courland. He was taken priſoner by the Ruſſians in Poland, and ſent hither, where he lived in eaſe and ſolitude, and was regularly viſited by all travellers.

This gentleman had a creature called kaberda, which was brought to him when

a fawn by ſome of the Tonguſy. It is the animal from which the ſweet-ſmelling drug called muſk is taken. The muſk grows about the navel, in form of an excreſcence, which is cut off, and preſerved, when the creature is killed. There are many of them in this country; but the muſk is not ſo ſtrong ſcented as that which comes from China, and more ſouthern climates. The general had bred this creature to be very familiar. He fed at his table with bread and roots. When dinner was over, it jumped on the table, and picked up the crumbs. It followed him about the ſtreets like a dog. I muſt confeſs it was pleaſing to ſee it cut caprioles, and play with children like a kid.

The kaberda is a ſize leſs than the fallow-deer, and its colour darker. It is of a pretty ſhape, having erect horns, without branches; is very ſwift, and haunts rocks and mountains of difficult acceſs to men or dogs; and, when hunted, jumps from cliff to cliff with incredible celerity, and firmneſs

neſs of foot. The fleſh is eſteemed better veniſon than any of the deer kind, of larger ſize, whereof there is great variety in theſe parts.

Before I leave Elimſky, I ſhall, as uſual, give a ſhort account of ſome of the places adjacent; particularly thoſe to the north-eaſt, towards the river Lena, and Yakutſky, according as I have been informed by travellers, on whoſe veracity I could entirely depend.

The people who travel in winter from hence to theſe places, generally do it in January or February. It is a very long and difficult journey, and which none but Tonguſians, or ſuch hardy people, have abilities to perform. The Ruſſians frequently finiſh it in ſix weeks. The common method is as follows: After travelling a few days in ſledges, when the road becomes impaſſable by horſes, they ſet themſelves on ſnow-ſhoes, and drag after them what is called a nart, containing proviſions and other neceſſaries, which are as few and

light

light as poſſible. This nart is a kind of ſledge, about five feet long, and ten inches broad, which a man may eaſily draw upon the deepeſt ſnow. At night, they make a large fire, and lay themſelves down to ſleep in theſe narrow ſledges. As ſoon as they have refreſhed themſelves, they again proceed on their ſnow-ſhoes, as before. This manner of travelling continues about the ſpace of ten days, when they come to a place where they procure dogs to draw both themſelves and their narts. The dogs are yoked by pairs, and are more or fewer in number, according to the weight they have to draw. Being trained to the work, they go on with great ſpirit, barking all the way; and the perſon, who lies in the ſledge, holds a ſmall cord to guide the dog that leads the reſt. They are faſtened to the ſledge by a ſoft rope, which is tied about their middle, and paſſes through between their hind legs. I have been ſurpriſed to ſee the weight that theſe creatures are able to draw; for travellers muſt carry along

along with them proviſions, both for themſelves and the dogs. Theſe watchful animals know the time of ſetting out in the morning, and make a diſmal howling, till they are fed, and purſue their journey. This way of travelling would not, I believe, ſuit every conſtitution; the very ſight of it ſatisfied my curioſity. Thus, however, theſe people proceed, for near three weeks, till they arrive at ſome villages on the Lena, where, leaving the dogs, they procure horſes, with which they travel to the town of Yakutſky. This place has its name from a rivulet, called Yakut, which empties itſelf into the Lena.

I have been, perhaps, too particular in deſcribing the method of travelling with ſnow-ſhoes and dogs; but, as theſe things are known to few Europeans, I concluded an account of them would not be diſagreeable. I have ſeen ſeveral Swediſh officers who have travelled to Yakutſky in this manner. I tried the ſnow-ſhoes myſelf, and

and found them very fatiguing; but time and practice make them eaſy and familiar.

There is a more agreeable road from Elimſky to Yakutſky than that I have mentioned, which is by water, down the river Lena; but this rout will not agree with the time and circumſtances of every traveller. Thoſe who travel from Irkutſky by this courſe go by land to a place called Vercholenſky Oſtrogue, ſituated near the ſource of the Lena, where they embark, and fall down the ſtream. Thoſe who go from Elimſky, croſs the country directly, about two days journey, to the firſt convenient place upon the Lena, where they procure veſſels, and ſail down the river to Yakutſky, or any other place; but, in this paſſage by water, they are peſtered with numbers of large gnats and muſkitoes, which leſſen the pleaſure of the voyage.

Before I proceed to the northward, it will not be improper to give a ſhort deſcription of the famous river Lena; which, for the length of its courſe, and quantity of

water, may be compared to any of the largeſt rivers in the world.

The Lena riſes at a ſmall diſtance northward from the Baykall lake, and runs to the north, with a little variation, till it diſcharges itſelf into the Northern Ocean. I compute the length of it, from the ſource to the ocean, to be about two thouſand five hundred Engliſh miles, though it is much more by common report. It is navigable during this whole courſe, having no cataracts ſo great as to prevent the paſſage of veſſels of conſiderable burden. It receives many great rivers, moſt of which come from the eaſt. It may be eaſily imagined, that the Lena cannot fail of being ſtored with various kinds of excellent fiſh, when the other rivers in Siberia afford ſuch plenty and variety. The banks are generally overgrown with tall thick woods, wherein are abundance of game, and wild beaſts. The country, between its ſource and the Baykall lake, is well peopled, abounding with

with many Ruſs villages and corn-fields, along the banks of the river.

Having formerly mentioned Yakutſky and Kamtzatſky, I ſhall add a few obſervations on theſe two provinces.

The town of Yakutſky, capital of the province of that name, is ſituated on the weſt bank of the river Lena, and governed by a commandant; whoſe office is reckoned very lucrative, as many ſables, and other valuable furs, are found in that province.

The winter here is very long, and the froſt ſo violent, that it is never out of the earth, in the month of June, beyond two feet and an half below the ſurface. When the inhabitants bury their dead three feet deep, they are laid in frozen earth; for the heat of the ſun never penetrates above two feet, or two feet and an half; ſo that, I am informed, all the dead bodies remain in the earth unconſumed, and will do ſo till the day of judgment.

The

The town, and many villages in its neighbourhood, are inhabited by Ruſſians, who have horſes and cows, but no ſheep nor corn. They are plentifully ſupplied with corn from the ſouthern parts of the country, by water-carriage along the Lena. And, in ſummer, they make hay enough to feed their cattle in winter.

The province of Yakutſky is inhabited by a numerous tribe of Tartars, by which name the Ruſſians call the whole of the natives of this country, however they differ from one another in religion, language, and manners. Thoſe of this province are named Yakuty. They occupy a great ſpace of territory round this place, eſpecially to the eaſt, where they border with the extenſive province of Kamtzatſky.

The Yakuty differ little from the Tonguſians, either in their perſons or way of life. Their occupation, like that of the other natives, is fiſhing and hunting. They have flattiſh faces, little black eyes, and long black hair, plaited, and hanging down their

their backs. Many of the men are marked in the face with charcoal, after the manner of the Tonguſians. I have, however, ſeen many of theſe people, both men and women, of good complexions. They often ſell their children to the Ruſſians, who are very fond of them, as they generally make truſty ſervants.

Theſe people, though otherwiſe humane and tractable, have among them one very barbarous cuſtom: When any of their people are infirm through age, or ſeized with diſtempers reckoned incurable, they make a ſmall hut for the patient, near ſome river, in which they leave him, with ſome proviſions, and ſeldom or never return to viſit him. On ſuch occaſions, they have no regard to father or mother, but ſay they do them a good office in ſending them to a better world. Whereby it appears, that even theſe rude ignorant people have a notion of a future ſtate.

Under Kamtzatſky I include all that vaſt tract of land reaching from the river Amoor,

Amoor, along the ſhore of the Eaſtern, or Japaneſe ocean, called by the Ruſſians Tikoe More, or the Calm Sea, to the north-eaſt point of the continent. The country along the ſhore is very pleaſant and healthy, eſpecially to the ſouth, where the climate is temperate. This part of the country produces grain, and, as I have been informed, even grapes and other fruits. The inhabitants are very humane and hoſpitable.

When the Ruſſians firſt entered this province, the Kamtzedans endeavoured to oppoſe them. For this purpoſe they aſſembled great numbers of men, armed, after the faſhion of their country, with bows, arrows, and ſhort lances, headed with bone, ſharpened at the point. Whence it appears, that theſe people knew no more the uſe of iron, than the Mexicans on the arrival of the Spaniards in America. Their multitudes were ſoon diſperſed by a few Ruſſians with fire-arms, which, in thoſe days, had rifled barrels, and a ſmall bore, which

which killed at a great diſtance. The poor Kamtzedans, ſeeing their people fall without any viſible wound, and aſtoniſhed with the fire and noiſe of the gunpowder, left the field in the utmoſt conſternation. Their diſpoſitions now were wholly inclined to peace; and a few of their chief men were ſent to the Ruſſians in order to obtain it. They proſtrated themſelves, in the moſt ſubmiſſive manner, before the leader of the party, and begged of him to grant them peace; which he did, on condition of their paying to his Majeſty an annual tribute of ſables, or other furs. This condition they have punctually performed ever ſince.

Many parts of Kamtzatſky are hilly and mountainous, particularly to the north, and covered with tall woods. At Ochotſky is a good harbour, and timber enough to build a royal navy. There are many great and ſmall rivers that run through the country, and empty themſelves into the Eaſtern Ocean, among which is a great river called Anadeer. To the north of this river, towards

wards the ocean, lies an extenſive tract of land, little known, and inhabited by a fierce and ſavage people, called by the Ruſſians Anadeertzy, who continue very untractable.

I have nothing further to add concerning theſe remote provinces, only, I am perſuaded, that the iſlands of Japan can be at no great diſtance from the ſouthern parts of Kamtzatſky. What confirmed me in this opinion is, that I ſaw at St Peterſburgh a young man, a native of Japan, who, I believe, is yet alive in the Academy of Sciences at that place. I aſked him, by what accident he was brought ſo far from his own country; and he gave me the following account: That his father and himſelf, with a few perſons more, being at a noted town called Naggiſaky, on the weſt coaſt of the iſland, employed about ſome affairs of trade, and having finiſhed their buſineſs, intended to return to their own habitations, on the north ſhore, by ſailing round the coaſt. Therefore went they on board a

ſmall

ſmall boat, and begun their voyage homeward; but, meeting with a ſtrong gale off the land, they were unfortunately driven out to ſea, and, in a few days, were caſt upon the coaſt of Kamtzatſky, half-ſtarved, and in the greateſt diſtreſs. In this condition they met with a Ruſſian officer, who afforded them all that aſſiſtance which common humanity dictates on ſuch occaſions. Notwithſtanding all his care, ſeveral of the old people died, being quite ſpent with fatigue, and want of victuals. That he and another youth, who was ſince dead, were ſent to St Peterſburgh, where his Majeſty was pleaſed to order that they ſhould be provided for in the Academy. This young man could read and write both the Japaneſe and Ruſſian languages.

We ſet out from Elimſky on the 12th; and next day, in the evening, came to a ſmall village, upon the north bank of the river Angara, about eighty verſt diſtant from Elimſky. During theſe two days we ſaw no houſe nor any inhabitants, the whole

of the country through which we paſſed being covered with tall and thick woods. There is a narrow road cut for ſledges, and the trees on each ſide meeting at the top ſhade it by day, and in the night make it very dark, and almoſt diſmal.

We paſſed the night in this village, where we got freſh horſes; and, next morning, repeated our journey almoſt due eaſt up the river Angara upon the ice. Along the banks we found many villages well peopled. The face of the country had now a different aſpect from what I had ſeen for ſeveral months; ſometimes we ſaw a fine champaign country, exhibiting a beautiful and extenſive proſpect; at other times, the view was agreeably varied with woods and riſing grounds. The north ſide of the river is moſtly overgrown with woods. There are ſome openings along the banks, where we found villages, and abundance of cattle and proviſions.

The 15th, we arrived at a large village called Ballaganſky, ſituated on the ſouth ſide

ſide of the Angara, near a rivulet, running from the ſouth, called Unga. The ſituation of this place is very pleaſant, as it ſtands in a fruitful plain, and has many corn-fields and woods in the neighbourhood.

Here we found another tribe of the natives of Siberia, who differ, in ſome particulars, from all thoſe I have formerly deſcribed. They are called by the Ruſſians Bratſky, but by themſelves Buraty. They live in tents all the year; and, having large flocks of ſheep, and many cows and horſes, they remove from place to place, as the convenience of grazing requires. Their language has a great affinity to that of the Kalmucks; and they have prieſts among them who can read and write that language. As to their dreſs and manner of life, I could obſerve little difference between them and the Kalmucks on the Volga; and therefore conclude they have both deſcended from the ſame original. Their faces, however, are not quite ſo flat as thoſe

of

of the Kalmucks; their noſes being ſomewhat higher, and their countenances more open.

The Buraty are ſtout active men, but hate all kind of labour: For, though they have the example of the Ruſſians plowing and ſowing their ground, and living plentifully on the produce of this rich and fertile ſoil, they chuſe ſtill to live in their tents, and tend their flocks, on which their ſubſiſtence entirely depends.

The chief exerciſe of the men is hunting and riding. They have a good breed of ſaddle-horſes, and their horned cattle are very large. Their ſheep have broad tails, and their mutton is excellent. They have alſo great abundance of goats; for all theſe animals they make no proviſion of fodder, but leave them to feed in the open fields. When the ſnow falls to a great depth, which ſeldom happens in theſe parts, they drive them to the ſouthward to riſing grounds, where little ſnow lies.

Their

Their arms are bows and arrows, lances and ſabres; all of which are uſed on horſe-back; for, like the Kalmucks, they have no infantry. They are dexterous archers, and ſkilful horſemen.

Theſe people were formerly ſubject to a prince of the Mongals, but now live very quietly under the Ruſſian government. They are at preſent a very numerous people, reaching towards the eaſt and ſouth of the Baykall lake, and are generally reckoned very honeſt and ſincere.

As to their dreſs, the men wear a coat, or rather gown, of ſheep-ſkins, girt about the middle, in all ſeaſons; a ſmall round cap, faced with fur, having a taſſel of red ſilk at the top, which, together with a pair of drawers and boots, makes up the whole of their apparel. The womens dreſs is nearly the ſame, only their gowns are plaited about the waiſt, and hang down like a petticoat. The married women have their hair hanging in two locks, one on each ſide of the head, drawn through two iron rings

rings to prevent its floating on the breaſt, and looking very like a tye-wig. Round their fore-head they wear a hoop of poliſhed iron, made faſt behind; and on their head a ſmall round cap, faced with fur, and embroidered, in their faſhion, to diſtinguiſh it from thoſe of the men. The maids are dreſſed in the ſame manner, only their hair is all plaited, hanging in ſeparate locks round their head, and is as black as a raven: Some of them have good complexions. Both the men and women are courteous in their behaviour. I ſhould like them much better if they were a little more cleanly. Both their perſons and tents are extremely naſty, from their uſing only ſkins to preſerve them from the cold; on theſe they ſit or lie, round a little fire, in their tents.

The religion of the Buraty ſeems to be the ſame with that of the Kalmucks, which is downright Paganiſm of the groſſeſt kind. They talk indeed of an Almighty and good being, who created all things, whom they call

call Burchun, but ſeem bewildered, in obſcure and fabulous notions, concerning his nature and government. They have two high prieſts, to whom they pay great reſpect; one is called Delay-Lama, the other Kutuchtu. Of theſe prieſts I ſhall have an opportunity to give ſome account afterwards.

In paſſing the tents of the Buraty, I often obſerved a long pole, whereon was hung, by the horns, the head and ſkin of a ſheep. On inquiring the reaſon of this appearance, I was told that the animal, whoſe head and ſkin theſe were, had been ſlain, and offered in ſacrifice, to the God who protected their flocks and herds. I could obſerve no images among them, except ſome relicks given them by their prieſts, which they had from the Delay-Lama; theſe are commonly hung up in a corner of their tents, and ſometimes about their necks, by way of an amulet, to preſerve them from misfortunes.

The

The 16th, we came to another large village, called Kamenka, ſituated on the north bank of the river, where we found many of the Buraty in their tents. This day we had ſome rain, which melted much ſnow, and made it dangerous to travel upon the ice; ſo that we were obliged to leave the river, and make the beſt of our way along the banks; for ſeveral of our horſes broke through the ice, and were got up again with no ſmall difficulty.

The 17th, our route lay to the ſouth-eaſt. The alteration of the weather was now very perceptible, the heat of the ſun was very intenſe, and the ſnow ſuddenly diſappeared, leaving no marks of winter, except the ice upon the river, which was vaniſhing very faſt. Thus, in the ſpace of a few days, we paſſed from a cold winter to a warm ſpring; and one would almoſt have imagined we had been imperceptibly dropped into another climate. Our ſledges, in which we had travelled and lodged, for moſt part, during the winter, could now be of

of no uſe; and we left them to be put on wheel-carriages, in order to follow us as ſhould be convenient.

Having procured ſuch horſes and furniture as the place afforded, we proceeded along the north bank of the Angara, towards Irkutſky. We were eſcorted by ſome Coſſacks, and a party of the Buraty, armed with bows and arrows. We hunted all the way as we travelled, and were not a little ſurpriſed to ſee the Buraty kill many hares with their arrows. This exerciſe was very ſeaſonable, as we had been confined to ſledges for more than three months, during our journey from Cazan to this place.

On the 18th of March, we arrived at the town of Irkutſky, ſo called from the rivulet Irkut, which falls into the Angara near it. It ſtands on the north bank of the Angara, in a large plain, to the north of which the grounds are very high, and covered with woods. On the ſouth ſide of the river, towards the Baykall lake, are high hills, riſing to the ſouth, and covered

with tall trees, among which are many larixes and Siberian cedars. The larix, called in Ruſs liſvinitza, is a well known tree in theſe parts; near the root of it grows a famous drug, called agarick, in form of a muſhroom; it ſheds its leaf in autumn, and in ſummer it looks like a pine; it grows very ſtraight and tall, and is reckoned good timber for ſhip-building; it bears a cone like the fir-tree, containing the ſeed, but not half ſo large.

What is called the cedar is a large tall tree, which never ſhades the leaf; it is white and ſmooth, but has not the leaſt ſmell of cedar. They uſe it chiefly in building houſes; and it makes the fineſt white floors, and freeſt from knots, of any wood I know. The leaves are like thoſe of a pine, but grow in taſſels, very beautiful. The cones are large, and inſtead of ſeed, like the fir, contain a ſmall nut with a kernel, of which the people in this country are very fond, and eat it by way of a deſert, in place of better fruit. It has a pleaſant taſte,

taſte, like that of raiſins, and is eſteemed good for the ſtomach.

The town of Irkutſky is fortified with a ditch, and ſtrong palliſades, having towers at certain diſtances. The garriſon conſiſts of ſome regular troops, beſides a number of Coſſacks, or the militia of the country. The town contains about two thouſand houſes; and the inhabitants are plentifully ſupplied with proviſions of all kinds from the neighbouring villages. The adjacent woods abound with variety of game. The river affords ſturgeon, and many other kinds of fiſh, but no ſterlet; becauſe, as I apprehend, they delight in muddy ſtreams, and the water at this place is ſo clear, that, in two fathoms deep, one may ſee the pebbles at the bottom.

At Irkutſky is a good market for furs of all ſorts, and likewiſe for many kinds of Chineſe goods. All merchandiſe muſt be entered at the cuſtom-houſe in this place, and pays a duty of ten *per cent.* which pro-

duces

duces a conſiderable revenue to his Majeſty.

The 25th of March, our baggage arrived, after ſurmounting many difficulties on the road. They had been obliged to leave many of the ſledges, after taking the baggage off them, and putting it on wheel-carriages.

Our deſign was to have croſſed the Baykall Sea upon the ice, and then proceeded by land to the town of Selinginſky; but we came too late for that purpoſe. The ſeaſon was ſo far advanced, that, before our carriages arrived, the river was almoſt free of ice. We were informed, indeed, that the ice upon the lake was ſufficiently ſtrong to bear horſes; but, upon conſidering the matter, it was thought moſt adviſeable to remain here, till the ice in the ſea was alſo melted, that we might go by water to Selinginſky; and orders were immediately given that veſſels ſhould be prepared for this purpoſe.

April

April 1ſt, we croſſed the river, accompanied by Mr Rakitin the commandant, in order to take a view of the country towards the ſouth. We rode through fine woods of ſtately oaks, and other trees, formerly mentioned. We hunted all the way, and found abundance of game. At laſt, we came to a ſmall Ruſſian village, in a fruitful valley, encompaſſed with hills covered with woods, where we lodged. Next day we went ten or a dozen miles farther, in ſearch of wild beaſts; but, finding none, we returned to the ſame village, and the day following to Irkutſky.

The 10th, we were entertained with a famous Buratſky Shaman, who was alſo lama or prieſt, and was brought from a great diſtance. As theſe ſhamans make a great noiſe in this part of the world, and are believed, by the ignorant vulgar, to be inſpired, I ſhall give ſome account of the behaviour of this one, in particular, by which it will appear that the whole is an impoſition.

He

He was introduced to the ambaſſador by the commandant, accompanied by ſeveral chiefs of his own tribe, who treat him with great reſpect. He was a man of about thirty years of age, of a grave aſpect and deportment. At his introduction, he had a cup of brandy preſented to him, which he drank, but refuſed any more.

After ſome converſation, he was deſired to exhibit ſome ſpecimen of his art; but he replied, he could do nothing in a Ruſſian houſe, becauſe there were ſome images of ſaints which prevented his ſucceſs. The performance was therfore adjourned to a Buratſky tent in the ſuburbs. Accordingly, in the evening, we went to the place appointed, where we found the ſhaman, with ſeveral of his companions, round a little fire, ſmoking tobacco, but no women among them. We placed ourſelves on one ſide of the tent, leaving the other for him and his countrymen. After ſitting about half an hour, the ſhaman placed himſelf croſs-legged upon the floor, cloſe by a few burn-

burning coals upon the hearth, with his face towards his companions; then he took two ſticks, about four feet long each, one in each hand, and began to ſing a diſmal tune, beating time with the ſticks; all his followers joined in the chorus. During this part of the performance, he turned and diſtorted his body into many different poſtures, till at laſt he wrought himſelf up to ſuch a degree of fury, that he foamed at the mouth, and his eyes looked red and ſtaring. He now ſtarted up on his legs, and fell a dancing, like one diſtracted, till he trode out the fire with his bare feet. Theſe unnatural motions were, by the vulgar, attributed to the operations of a divinity; and, in truth, one would almoſt have imagined him poſſeſſed by ſome daemon. After being quite ſpent with dancing, he retired to the door of the tent, and gave three dreadful ſhrieks, by which, his companions ſaid, he called the daemon to direct him in anſwering ſuch queſtions as ſhould be propoſed. He then returned, and ſat down in great com-

compoſure, telling he was ready to reſolve any queſtion that might be aſked. Several of our people put queſtions in abundance; all which he anſwered readily, but in ſuch ambiguous terms that nothing could be made of them. He now performed ſeveral legerdemain tricks, ſuch as ſtabbing himſelf with a knife, and bringing it up at at his mouth, running himſelf through with a ſword, and many others too trifling to mention. In ſhort, nothing is more evident than that theſe ſhamans are a parcel of jugglers, who impoſe on the ignorant and credulous vulgar.

The 6th of April, we went to a monaſtery, about five miles to the eaſtward of this place, where we dined with the Archbiſhop of Tobolſky. This prelate had lately come hither to viſit ſome monaſteries, and, in his way, had baptiſed a number of Oſteaks and other heathens. From this time, till the 8th of May, little material happened. We waited patiently for the diſſolving of the ice on the Baykall lake,

lake, of which we expected to receive the moſt certain knowledge, by means of the floating ice on the Angara; for, when this happens, that river is filled with floating cakes, which are driven along with great fury by the wind and current.

The 11th, the river was now clear of ice. Our baggage was ſhipped on board large flat-bottomed boats, and drawn up the ſtream; the wind being ſoutherly, made the progreſs of the boats very ſlow. The ambaſſador, therefore, reſolved to remain at this place till he heard they had nearly reached the lake, which is about forty verſt from Irkutſky.

Before we left this place, Mr Kremenſky, our interpreter for the Latin tongue, died of a hectic diſorder. He was a Poliſh gentleman, and had laboured under this diſtemper for ſome years.

## CHAP. V.

### *From Irkutſky, croſs the Lake Baykall, to Selinginſky; ſome Account of the Kutuchtu, &c.*

THE 15th of May, the weather being very hot, we did not ſet out till after dinner, when we left Irkutſky, accompanied by the commandant and ſome other officers of the place. We rode along the north bank of the river, through pleaſant woods, and ſome open fields, till we came, about midnight, to a few fiſhermen's huts, where we halted for a few hours, and repeated our journey early next morning.

At

At noon, we arrived at a ſmall chapel, dedicated to St Nicolas, where travellers uſually pay their devotions, and pray for a proſperous paſſage over the lake. About this religious houſe there are a few fiſhermen's huts. Two monks conſtantly attend, to put people in mind of their duty, and receive a ſmall gratuity from the paſſengers.

Here we found our boats waiting for us below the falls of the Angara. From hence you can ſee the lake, burſting out betwixt two high rocks, and tumbling down over huge ſtones, that lie quite croſs the river, which I reckon to be about an Engliſh mile broad. The whole channel of the river is covered with theſe rocks, from the mouth of the lake down to the Chapel of St Nicolas, about the diſtance of an Engliſh mile. There is no paſſage for the ſmalleſt boats, except along the eaſt ſhore, thro' a narrow ſtrait, between the rocks and the land. In the moſt ſhallow places, there is about five or ſix feet water, and breadth

all

all the way ſufficient for any ſingle veſſel. But if, by ſtreſs of weather, or any other accident, a boat ſhould have the misfortune to miſs this opening, and be thrown upon the rocks, ſhe muſt immediately be daſhed to pieces, and the whole crew inevitably periſh. The waters, daſhing upon the ſtones, make a noiſe like the roaring of the ſea, ſo that people near them can ſcarce hear one another ſpeak. I cannot expreſs the awfulneſs with which one is ſtruck, at the ſight of ſuch aſtoniſhing ſcenes of nature as appear round this place, and which, I believe, are not to be equalled in the known world. The pilots and ſailors who navigate the lake ſpeak of it with much reverence, calling it the Holy Sea, and the mountains about it the Holy Mountains; and are highly diſpleaſed with any perſon who ſpeaks of it with diſreſpect, or calls it a lake. They tell a ſtory of a certain pilot who always gave it that appellation, but was ſeverely puniſhed for his contempt. Being on a voyage in autumn, he

and

and his crew were toſſed from ſide to ſide of the lake, till they were half ſtarved, and in great danger of periſhing. Neceſſity, at laſt, forced this hardy mariner to comply with the prevailing cuſtom, and pray to the Holy Sea and Mountains to have compaſſion on him in ſuch diſtreſs. His prayers were effectual, and he arrived ſafe to land; but was obſerved, ever after, to ſpeak of the ſea with the greateſt reſpect.

The afternoon was ſpent in adjuſting the tackle, and preparing the barks for being drawn up the ſtrong narrow current.

The 17th, the wind being contrary, and blowing pretty freſh, the pilots would not venture out. I, and three more of our company, took this opportunity of walking up to the top of the mountains, where we had a full view of the ſea, and the land to the ſouth, on the other ſide of it, and alſo to the weſt, as far as it extends. The land on the ſouth ſide of the lake riſes gradually, till it terminates in hills moſtly covered with wood; but, on the weſtern ſhore,

ſhore, there are very high mountains, ſeveral whereof are overſpread with deep ſnow, which we could eaſily diſcern, though at a great diſtance.

The Baykall Sea, oppoſite to the mouth of the Selinga, is reckoned about fifty Engliſh miles broad, though it is much broader in ſome other places, and about three hundred miles in length. It is wholly freſh water, and is ſupplied by the Selinga, and many other rivers, from the ſouth, and by the higher Angara from the eaſt. The courſe of the ſea is from ſouth-weſt to north-eaſt, and has very few ſhelves or rocks. There is only one large iſland, near the middle of it, called Olchon. It is bounded on the north by a ridge of high rocks, which run from one end of it to the other. The only opening by which it diſcharges itſelf is that into the Angara, which, though it is a natural paſſage, appears as if cut through the rocks by art. In my opinion, one cannot imagine a more beautiful proſpect of nature, than is ſeen from

from the top of theſe mountains, which may eaſily be perceived from the ſhort and imperfect ſketch I have drawn of it. The woods on the ſummit of the rocks are ſhort, and thinly ſcattered; but, on their declivity towards the north, and in the valleys, the trees become gradually both taller and larger. There is abundance of game and wild beaſts in theſe woods, particularly the wild boar, which was the firſt of that ſpecies we found in this country; a certain ſign of a temperate climate; for theſe animals cannot endure the exceſſive cold in more northerly parts. The hunting of theſe animals being a dangerous kind of ſport, we carefully avoided their haunts. In the evening, we returned to our barks at the chapel of St Nicolas.

The Baykall is abundantly furniſhed with various kinds of excellent fiſh, particularly ſturgeon, and a fiſh called omully, in ſhape and taſte reſembling a herring, but broader and larger. The ſea produces alſo great numbers of ſeals, whoſe ſkins are pre-

preferred in quality to thoſe of ſeals caught in ſalt-water. I am of opinion, that both the ſeals and fiſh in the Baykall came originally from the Northern Ocean, as the communication between them is open, tho' the diſtance be very great.

The ſeals are generally caught in winter, by ſtrong nets hung under the ice. The method they uſe is, to cut many holes in the ice, at certain diſtances from one another, ſo that the fiſhermen can, with long poles, ſtretch their nets from one hole to another, and thus continue them to any diſtance. The ſeals, not being able to bear long confinement under the ice, for want of air, ſeek theſe holes for relief, and thus entangle themſelves in the nets. Theſe creatures, indeed, commonly make many holes for themſelves, at the ſetting in of the froſt. In this manner they catch, not only ſeals, but fiſh of all kinds, in winter.

The 18th, the wind being favourable, we put off from St Nicolas's. As we had workmen enough, we left part of them on board

board, to aſſiſt the pilot, by ſetting poles, while the reſt were employed on ſhore, in towing the barks againſt a ſtrong current. In about the ſpace of three hours we got clear of the current, and all hands came on board. We were now quite becalmed, and obliged to take to our oars. We rowed along ſhore to the eaſtward till about noon, when we had an eaſy breeze, which ſoon carried us two thirds over the ſea, under our main-ſail. The wind now chopped about to the eaſt, and blew ſo freſh, that we could not make the river Selinga, which was the port where we intended to land. As theſe barks cannot turn to windward, we were drove about ten miles to the weſtward of the Poſſolſky monaſtery, which ſtands about ſix miles to the weſtward of the Selinga, in a pleaſant and fruitful plain, furniſhing an extenſive view in all directions; where, endeavouring to get to land at any rate, we ſteered into a bay, in which we fancied we ſaw the ſhore covered with cockle-ſhells or white ſand. On a nearer

approach, our miſtake appeared. For what ſeemed ſhells or ſand, at a diſtance, was only great and ſmall cakes of ice, beating with the waves againſt the main body of the ice, which lay firm, and covered the whole bay. Our people, on diſtinguiſhing the ice, immediately ſtruck ſail, and were in no ſmall confuſion. But Mr Iſmaeloff ordered the ſail to be again ſet, and to ſteer directly for the ice. In the mean time, all hands were employed in hanging boards about the bow of the veſſel, to prevent the cutting of the planks, and in ſetting poles to puſh off the large cakes. At laſt we came among the ice, which made a terrible rattling at firſt; but the farther we advanced, the eaſier our bark lay, till we came to the main body of the ice, where ſhe remained as unmoved as if ſhe had been in a mill-pond, though it ſtill continued to blow hard. We now quitted the ſhip, and walked about upon the ice, which was yet ſtrong enough to carry horſes. By this time the ſun was ſet, which prevented our

deſign

deſign of going aſhore, for the diſtance was at leaſt five Engliſh miles; and there was a great gap in the ice near the place where we lay.

About midnight the wind turned weſterly, and, at break of day, we left our ſtation, and ſailed to the eaſtward, and, about noon, entered the river Selinga, where we found our other three barks. They having been two or three miles before us the preceding night, had time enough to reach anchoring ground, and, by this means, eſcaped the ice, ſo little expected at this ſeaſon of the year. We ourſelves, before entering the bay, had ſounded, in order to diſcover whether we could come to an anchor; but no bottom could be found, tho' we joined ſeveral lead-lines together, amounting to above one hundred and fifty fathoms.

The mouth of the Selinga is ſurrounded with tall reeds, and contains ſeveral iſlands. The entry into it is very difficult, except the wind be fair, becauſe of many flats and

ſand-banks, thrown up by the current of the river. Here we found great flocks of all kinds of water-fowl, particularly ſnipes.

The wind continuing fair, we ſailed up the river to a ſmall oratory, dedicated alſo to St Nicolas, where all hands went aſhore to return thanks for their ſafe paſſage. The prior of the Poſſolſky monaſtery came to this place to ſalute the ambaſſador, and brought a preſent of fiſh, and ſuch other proviſions as theſe religious houſes afford.

In the evening we proceeded up the river, till night overtook us, when we hauled our boats cloſe to the bank, and lay till next morning, which was the 20th of May. This day being calm, the barks were towed up the river; and we walked along the banks, hunting all the way in a very pleaſant country. At night we lay by, as formerly.

The 21ſt, the weather was very hot. We continued our voyage in the ſame manner as before.

The

The 22d, the wind being fair, we hoiſted ſails, and in the evening arrived at a large village, well built and peopled, called Kabbanſky Oſtrogue. This place is pleaſantly ſituated, on a riſing ground upon the weſt bank of the river, ſurrounded with many corn-fields and much paſturage. Here we took new hands on board our barks, and diſmiſſed the former to return in open boats to Irkutſky.

The 25th, we reached another large village called Bolſhoy Zaimka, ſituated in a fertile country. In the neighbourhood is a ſmall monaſtery, and many leſſer villages. Many of the Buraty were encamped, with their flocks and herds, on both ſides of the river.

The climate on this ſide of the Baykall lake is much more temperate than on the north ſide. The land produces rich crops of wheat, rye, barley, oats, buck-wheat, and peaſe; beſides kitchen roots, and other garden ſtuff. The inhabitants have not yet begun to plant any kind of fruit-trees,

trees, which, I am perſuaded, would thrive exceedingly, as the winters are ſhort, and the ſnow does not lie above ſix weeks or two months. The banks of the river appeared very pleaſant, being finely varied with plains and woods.

The 26th, we came to a large town, called Udinſky, from the rivulet Uda, which runs into the Selinga, on the eaſt bank. This place alſo ſtands in a fertile plain, having hills covered with woods towards the eaſt. In theſe hills are found ſeveral rich ores, particularly of lead; in digging which many hands are now employed. The miners ſay it is of too hard a quality; however, they have extracted conſiderable quantities of ſilver from it; and I have been informed that they alſo found ſome veins of ſilver ore. As theſe works are but lately begun, it is not doubted that they are capable of great improvement, at an eaſy charge, as the metal lies ſo near the ſurface. Samples of theſe ores have been ſent to St Peterſburgh; and, I am informed,

ed, his Majeſty has engaged ſome German miners to make experiments upon them.

Both here and on the Angara iron is to be found in great abundance at the very ſurface: But as the diſtance is too great for exportation, it is not worth the labour. To ſupply the common conſumption of the country, the ſmith takes his bellows, goes to the mine, and ſmelts and works as much iron as he needs. I have ſeen ſome of this iron of an excellent, ſoft, and pliable quality.

Beſides the above mentioned, there are at this place very rich mines of copper. I have ſeen ſome of the ore with large veins of pure copper running through it. I make no doubt but time and future diſcoveries will bring theſe mines to perfection, to the great emolument of the Ruſſian empire.

All this country is under the juriſdiction of the commandant of Irkutſky, who ſends deputies to all the towns of this extenſive province, to adminiſter juſtice, and take care

care of his Majeſty's revenues. The power of nominating ſub-governours and commandants, is veſted by his Majeſty in the governour of Siberia, which gives him an authority equal to a ſovereign prince.

The ambaſſador, finding the progreſs of the boats againſt the ſtream very ſlow and tedious, being beſides much peſtered with gnats and muſkitoes, reſolved to go by land the reſt of the way to Selinginſky: For which purpoſe, the ſuperintendant of this place ordered horſes, and a proper eſcort, to be got ready againſt next morning on the other ſide of the river, the road on this ſide being interrupted by thick woods and deep rivers.

The 27th, having ſent off our barks, we croſſed the river, and, having no baggage, we ſoon mounted. The road lay through a fine plain, covered with excellent graſs. In the evening we came to a fountain of pure water, where we lodged in the tents of the Buraty, and ſlept on bull-hides.

The

The 28th, early, we proceeded, travelling over ſome pretty high hills overgrown with wood. About noon, we came to a river called Orongoy, which we croſſed on a tall camel, it being too deep for horſes. At this place we found a number of the Buraty encamped, with their flocks grazing in the neighbourhood.

Our horſes having ſwam the river, we went into one of the Buratſky tents till they were dried. The hoſpitable landlady immediately ſet her kettle on the fire to make us ſome tea; the extraordinary cookery of which I cannot omit deſcribing. After placing a large iron kettle over the fire, ſhe took care to wipe it very clean with a horſe's tail, that hung in a corner of the tent for that purpoſe; then the water was put into it, and ſoon after ſome coarſe bohea tea, which is got from China, and a little ſalt. When near boiling, ſhe took a large braſs ladle, and toſſed the tea till the liquor turned very brown. It was now taken off the fire, and, after ſubſiding

a little, was poured clear into another veſſel. The kettle being wiped clean with the horſe's tail as before, was again ſet upon the fire. The miſtreſs now prepared a paſte, of meal and freſh butter, that hung in a ſkin near the horſe's tail, which was put into the tea-kettle and fried. Upon this paſte the tea was again poured, to which was added ſome good thick cream, taken out of a clean ſheep's ſkin, which hung upon a peg among the other things. The ladle was again employed, for the ſpace of ſix minutes, when the tea, being removed from the fire, was allowed to ſtand a while in order to cool. The landlady now took ſome wooden cups, which held about half a pint each, and ſerved her tea to all the company. The principal advantage of this tea is, that it both ſatisfies hunger and quenches thirſt. I thought it not diſagreeable; but ſhould have liked it much better had it been prepared in a manner a little more cleanly. Our bountiful hoſteſs, however, gave us a hearty welcome; and as theſe

theſe people know not the uſe of money, there was nothing to pay for our entertainment. We only made her a preſent of a little tobacco to ſmoke, of which theſe people are very fond. I have given this receipt with a view that ſome European ladies may improve upon it.

After this ſhort repaſt, we mounted again; and, in the evening, came to a neat Ruſſian village, on the front of a pleaſant hill covered with wood. This place is ſurrounded with extenſive valleys and fine paſturage, and our accommodation was better than the preceding night. Here we met Mr Firſoff, colonel of the coſſacks, or militia of Selinginſky, with a ſquadron of horſe, armed with bows and arrows, and ſome firelocks, who came to eſcort the ambaſſador to that place.

The 29th of May we mounted early, and, by means of our coſſacks, hunted and ranged the woods, as we went along, in the manner of this country, called oblave in the Ruſſian language. Their method is

to

to form a ſemi-circle of horſemen, armed with bows and arrows, in order to incloſe the game. Within the ſemi-circle a few young men are placed, who give notice when the game is ſprung; theſe only are permitted to purſue, the others being confined to keep their ranks. Our coſſacks, with their arrows, killed three deer, and ſeveral hares: And, if killing harmleſs animals can be called diverſion, this may properly be reckoned one of the fineſt. After this faſhion they hunt bears, wolves, foxes, and wild boars.

About noon we came to a village on the Selinga, where we halted a few hours, and then croſſed the river in boats, which was near a mile broad at this place. Our coſſacks, however, ſought no boats, except one to tranſport their arms, cloaths, and ſaddles; which being done, all of them mounted their horſes, and plunged into the river without the leaſt concern. As ſoon as the horſes were ſet a ſwimming, for eaſe to them the men diſmounted, and, laying hold of

of the mane with one hand, guided them gently by the bridle with the other. This is the common method in this country of tranſporting men and horſes, which I look upon to be both ſafe and eaſy, provided the horſe is managed with a gentle hand, without checking him with ſudden jerks of the bridle.

We halted a little, after croſſing the river, till the horſes were dried; after which we mounted, and, in the evening, arrived at the town of Selinginſky, where we intended to wait for our barks, and the reſt of our people.

Selinginſky is ſituated on the eaſt bank of the noble river Selinga, in a deep, barren, ſandy ſoil, that produces almoſt nothing. The choice of this ſituation was extremely injudicious; for, had the founders gone but half a mile further down, to the place where now the inhabitants have their gardens, they would have had a ſituation, in every reſpect, preferable to the preſent.

This

This place conſiſts of about two hundred houſes and two churches, which are all of them built with wood. It is defended by a fortification of ſtrong palliſades, on which are mounted ſome cannon.

About a mile eaſtward of the town is a ridge of high hills, quite covered with wood. On the other ſide of the river the country is open, dry, and ſomewhat barren, but affords excellent paſture, particularly for ſheep, whereof the Buraty, the inhabitants, have large flocks. They are of that kind which hath broad tails; and their mutton is very good. Theſe people have, beſides, a large ſort of horned cattle, and abundance of horſes and camels, wherein all their riches conſiſt. Here ends the tribe of the Buraty; and the nation of the Mongalls begins.

The Mongalls are a numerous people, and occupy a large extent of country, from this place to the Kallgan, which ſignifies the Everlaſting Wall, or the great wall of China. From this wall they ſtretch them-

themſelves northward as far as the river Amoor, and from the Amoor weſtward to the Baykall Sea, where they border with the territories of the Kontayſha, or prince of the Black Kalmucks. On the ſouth, they are bounded by a nation called Tonguts, among whom the Delay-Lama has his reſidence. One may eaſily imagine, from the vaſt tract of land which the Mongalls occupy, that they muſt be very numerous, eſpecially when it is conſidered, that they live in a healthy climate, and have been engaged in no wars ſince they were conquered, partly by the Ruſſians on the weſt, and partly by the Chineſe on the eaſt; to whom all theſe people are now tributaries. In former times the Mongalls were troubleſome neighbours to the Chineſe, againſt whoſe incurſions the great wall was built.

Kamhi, the preſent Emperor of China, was the firſt who ſubdued theſe hardy Tartars, which he effected more by kind uſage and humanity than by his ſword; for theſe people

people are great lovers of liberty. The ſame gentle treatment hath been obſerved by the Ruſſians towards thoſe of them who are their ſubjects. And they themſelves confeſs, that, under the protection of theſe two mighty Emperors, they enjoy more liberty, and live more at eaſe, than they formerly did under their own princes.

The preſent Prince of Mongalia is called Tuſh-du-Chan, and reſides about ſix days journey to the ſouth-eaſt from Selinginſky. The place is called Urga, and is near to where the Kutuchtu or high-prieſt inhabits. When the Mongalls ſubmitted themſelves to the Emperor of China, it was agreed, that the Tuſh-du-Chan ſhould ſtill maintain the name and authority of a prince over his people, but undertake no war nor expedition without conſent of the Emperor; which has ſtrictly been obſerved ever ſince.

It is very remarkable, that in all the vaſt dominions of Mongalia, there is not ſo much as a ſingle houſe to be ſeen. All the

the people, even the prince and high-prieſt, live conſtantly in tents, and remove with their cattle from place to place as conveniency requires.

Theſe people do not trouble themſelves with plowing or digging the ground in any faſhion, but are content with the produce of their flocks. Satisfied with neceſſaries, without aiming at ſuperfluities, they purſue the moſt ancient and ſimple manner of life, which, I muſt confeſs, I think very pleaſant in ſuch a mild and dry climate.

From the river Volga to the wall of China there are three great Tartar princes, the Ayuka-Chan, the Kontayſha, and the Tuſh-du-Chan. Theſe three mighty nations have almoſt the ſame features, religion, and language, and live in the ſame manner. It will eaſily be perceived, by caſting an eye on the map, what an extent of territory theſe princes poſſeſs, whoſe ſubjects go by the general name of Kalmucks. Few languages can carry a traveller over a greater extent of country than

that of the Kalmucks. With the Arabic, indeed, a perſon may travel through many places of the eaſt, from Egypt to the court of the Great Mogul; but with the Illyric, he can travel much further than with either of the former, viz. from the Gulf of Venice to the utmoſt boundaries of Kamtzatſka; for the Ruſſian is a dialect of the Illyric.

The greateſt part of Mongalia is one continued waſte, except the places along the Amoor, and towards the Ruſſian borders on the weſt. The ſoil alſo to the ſouth from Selinginſky, is exceedingly fine, and capable, by proper culture, of producing grain of ſeveral ſorts.

Since I have mentioned the Amoor, I preſume this will be no improper place to give ſome account of that river. It is called by the Tartars Shaggalyn-oulla, or the Black Dragon, I ſuppoſe from the colour of its waters, and the windings of its courſe. It is formed of two large rivers, whoſe ſources are in the deſert, far to the eaſtward

eaſtward of this place. One is called Argun, which iſſues from a lake named Delay; the other is Ingoda, on the north bank of which ſtands the famous Ruſſian town Nertzinſky. The conflux of theſe rivers produces the Amoor, which runs towards the eaſt, augmenting daily by means of the many great and ſmall ſtreams it receives, till it becomes one of the largeſt rivers in this part of the world, and, after a long courſe, diſcharges itſelf into the Eaſtern or Chineſe ocean. It is remarkable, that from Cazan to theſe parts, the Amoor is the only river that runs eaſtward. Moſt, if not all, of the great rivers in Siberia have their courſes to the north and north-weſt.

Our barks arrived at Selinginſky on the 4th of June. After we had taken out of them what neceſſaries we wanted, they were deſpatched with the reſt of the baggage, for their greater ſecurity, to his Majeſty's ſtore-houſes at Strealka, about four miles

miles up the river, where the caravan for China then lay.

In the mean time, the ambaſſador wrote a letter to the Allegada, or prime miniſter, at the imperial court of Pekin, to notify his arrival, and deſire his excellency would give orders for his reception on the borders. This letter was ſent to the Prince of Mongalia, to be by him forwarded to court; for no ſtrangers are allowed to travel through his territories to China without his permiſſion. The officer who carried the letter to the prince, was treated with great civility, and his letter immediately ſent to court by an expreſs. A few days after, the prince ſent two gentlemen, one of whom was a lama, to congratulate the ambaſſador on his arrival in theſe parts. They were invited to dine with the ambaſſador, and behaved very decently.

The ſame officer, who carried the ambaſſador's letter to the Prince of Mongalia at Urga, was ordered to preſent his compliments to the Kutuchtu, or high prieſt, who

who is a near relation of the prince. He received the officer in a very friendly manner, desired him to sit down in his presence; an honour granted to very few, except ambassadors and pilgrims from remote countries; and, at his departure, gave him a present of some inconsiderable things, particularly a few pieces of Chinese silks.

I cannot leave this venerable personage, without taking some notice of him. I shall therefore relate a few things concerning him, among thousands more ridiculous, which the people in this country tell and believe.

This extraordinary man assumes to himself the character of omniscience, which is the interpretation of the word Kutuchtu; and the people are taught to believe that he really knows all things past, present, and future. As his intelligence, by means of his lamas, is very extensive, he is easily able to impose on the vulgar in this particular. They also

alſo believe, that he is immortal, not that his body lives always, but that his ſoul, upon the decay of an old one, immediately tranſmigrates into ſome young human body, which, by certain marks, the lamas diſcover to be animated by the ſoul of the Kutuchtu, and he is accordingly treated as high prieſt.

When the ſpirit of the Kutuchtu has taken poſſeſſion of a new body, that is, in plain Engliſh, when he is dead, the lamas are immediately employed to diſcover in what part of the world this wonderful perſon is regenerated, or born again, as they expreſs it. They need, however, go to no great diſtance to find him; for, the affair being previouſly concerted among the chief lamas, they ſoon determine the choice of a ſucceſſor, who generally happens to be a young boy that has been well inſtructed how to behave on that occaſion. When a ſucceſſor is pretended to be found, a company of lamas are ſent to examine the matter, who carry along with them many toys,

toys, ſuch as ſmall ſilver bells, and things of that nature, which belonged to the former Kutuchtu, intermixed with others that did not. All theſe are laid before the child, who picks out ſuch things as belonged to his predeceſſor, and diſcovers the greateſt fondneſs for them, but rejects with diſguſt whatever is not genuine. Beſides this trial, ſome queſtions are put to him, relative to wars or remarkable events, in his former ſtate; all which are anſwered to the ſatisfaction of the conclave; whereupon he is unanimouſly declared to be the ſelf-ſame Kutuchtu, is conducted with great pomp and ceremony to Urga, and lodged in the tent of the high prieſt.

Till the new Kutuchtu arrives at a certain age, he is entirely under the government of the lamas, and few are permitted to ſee him, except at a great diſtance, and even then it is not eaſy to get acceſs to him. It may ſeem ſurpriſing, that in ſo numerous an aſſembly of lamas, no intrigues ſhould be carried on, nor diſputes ariſe, among the

the electors. All is conducted without noiſe or contention. It is, however, imagined, that the authority of the prince greatly contributes to their unanimity.

The Mongalls relate, that their Kutuchtu now has lived fourteen generations, and renews his age every moon; for at the new moon he appears like a youth; when ſhe is full, like a full-grown man; but, when near the change, he is an old man with gray hairs.

What they call the Urga is the court, or the place where the prince and high prieſt reſide, who are always encamped at no great diſtance from one another. They have ſeveral thouſand tents about them, which are removed from time to time. The Urga is much frequented by merchants from China and Ruſſia, and other places, where all trade is carried on by barter, without money of any kind. The Chineſe bring hither ingots of gold, damaſks, and other ſilk and cotton ſtuffs, tea, and ſome porcelain, which are generally of an infe-

rior

rior quality, and proper for ſuch a market. The Ruſſian commodities are chiefly furs of all ſorts. Rhubarb is the principal article which is exchanged for theſe goods, great quantities whereof are produced in this country without any culture. The Mongalls gather and dry it in autumn, and bring it to this market, where it is bought up, at an eaſy rate, both by the Ruſſian and Chineſe merchants.

The Kutuchtu and his lamas are all clothed in yellow; and no layman is allowed to wear this colour except the prince. This mark of diſtinction makes them known and reſpected every where. They alſo wear about their neck a ſtring of beads, which are uſed in ſaying their prayers. The Mongalls believe in and worſhip one Almighty Creator of all things. They hold that the Kutuchtu is God's vicegerent on earth, and that there will be a ſtate of future rewards and puniſhments.

The following relation, which I had from a Ruſſian merchant, to whom the

thing happened, will ſhow the methods taken by theſe lamas to maintain the dignity and character of their mighty high-prieſt. This merchant had gone to the Urga, with an intention to trade with the Chineſe. While he was at this place, ſome pieces of damaſk were ſtolen out of his tent. He made a complaint to ſome of the lamas with whom he was acquainted, and the matter was ſoon brought before the Kutuchtu, who immediately ordered proper ſteps to be taken with a view to find out the thief. The affair was conducted in this uncommon manner; one of the lamas took a bench with four feet, which ſeems to have been of the conjuring kind: After turning it ſeveral times in different directions, at laſt it pointed directly to the tent where the ſtolen goods lay concealed. The lama now mounted aſtride on the bench, and ſoon carried it, or, as was commonly believed, it carried him to the very tent; where he ordered the damaſk to be produced. The demand was directly complied with;

with; for it is in vain, in ſuch caſes, to offer any excuſe.

I ſhall now ſubjoin a few obſervations on the Delay-Lama, or prieſt of the deſert, who is reckoned ſtill ſuperior to the Kutuchtu. He lives about a month's journey to the ſouth-eaſt of this place, among a people called the Tonguts, who uſe a different language from the Kalmucks. I am informed that the religion of the Tonguts is the ſame with that of the Mongalls; that they hold the ſame opinions with reſpect to the tranſmigration of the Delay-Lama, as the Mongalls do about the Kutuchtu, and that he is elected in the ſame manner. What appears moſt ſurpriſing is, that theſe two mighty Lamas keep a good correſpondence, and never encroach on one another's privileges. The word *delay* ſignifies either the ſea, or a great plain, ſuch as this prieſt inhabits.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

*Occurrences at Selinginſky; ſeveral parties of hunting; and journey continued to Saratzyn, the boundary between the Ruſſian and Chineſe territories.*

THE Tonguts are a ſeparate people, governed by a Prince whom they call Lazin-Chan. One of their princes was lately killed in an engagement with the Kontayſha, King of the Black Kalmucks. The Delay-Lama himſelf narrowly eſcaped being taken priſoner, notwithſtanding all his foreſight. The Lama threatened the Kon-

Kontayſha with many diſaſters, as the conſequences of ſuch proceedings. The Kontayſha, however, regarded them very little, till he had attained his ends; after which he generouſly reinſtated both the Prince and the Delay-Lama in their former dignity. The Kontayſha is of the ſame profeſſion with the Delay-Lama, and acknowledges his authority in religious matters.

I am informed there is a third Lama, called Bogdu-Pantzin, of ſtill greater authority than either of the former. But, as he lives at a great diſtance, near the frontiers of the Great Mogul, he is little known in theſe parts. Though I am unwilling to throw the leaſt reflection on any ſociety of men inſtituted for the promotion of religion and virtue, from all I can collect concerning theſe Lamas, they are little better than ſhamans of ſuperior dignity.

The anſwer to the letter, which the ambaſſador had written to Pekin, was not yet arrived. In the mean time, we were obliged to remain at Selinginſky, where we entertained

tertained ourſelves in the beſt manner we could.

June the 12th, walking along the bank of the river, I was a little ſurpriſed at the figure and dreſs of a man ſtanding among a number of boys who were angling for ſmall fiſhes. The perſon bought all the fiſhes alive, and immediately let them go again into the river, which he did very gently, one by one. The boys were very civil to him, though they looked upon him as diſtracted, on account of his behaviour. During this ceremony, he took little notice of me, though I ſpoke to him ſeveral times. I ſoon perceived, by his dreſs, and the ſtreak of ſaffron on his forehead, that he was one of the Brachmans from India.

After ſetting all the fiſh a-ſwimming, he ſeemed much pleaſed; and, having learned a little of the Ruſſian language, and a ſmattering of the Portugueſe, began to converſe with me. I carried him to my lodgings, and offered to entertain him with a dram; but he would taſte nothing; for he ſaid it

was

was againſt the rules of his religion to eat or drink with ſtrangers.

I aſked him the reaſon why he bought the fiſh to let them go again? He told me, that, perhaps, the ſouls of ſome of his deceaſed friends or relations had taken poſſeſſion of theſe fiſhes; and, upon that ſuppoſition, it was his duty to relieve them: That, according to their law, no animal whatever ought to be killed or eaten; and they always lived on vegetables.

After this interview, we became ſo familiar, that he came every day to viſit me. He was a chearful man, about ſeventy years of age. He had a buſh of hair growing on his forehead, very much matted, and, at leaſt ſix feet in length. When it hung looſe, it trailed upon the ground behind him; but he commonly wore it wrapped about his head, in form of a turban. The hair was not all his own, but collected as relics of his friends, and others of his profeſſion, reputed ſaints; all which he had intermixed and matted with his natural hair.

hair. Perſons of this character are called Faquers, and eſteemed ſacred every where.

He told me he was a native of Indoſtan, and had often been at Madraſs, which he called Chinpatan, and ſaid it belonged to the Engliſh. This circumſtance, added to ſeveral others, made me believe he was no impoſtor, but an innocent kind of creature, as are moſt of that ſect. He came to this country, in company with ſome others of his countrymen, on a pilgrimage, in order to pay their devotions to the Kutuchtu and Delay-Lama. They had been twelve months on their journey, and had travelled all the way on foot, over many high mountains and waſte deſerts, where they were obliged to carry their proviſions, and even water, on their backs. I ſhowed him a map of Aſia, whereon he pointed out the courſe of his journey; but found many errors in the geography; and no wonder; ſince few Europeans would have had the reſolution to undertake ſuch a journey as this man had done.

The

The 14th, a chief named Tayſha, of thoſe Mongalls who are ſubjects of his Majeſty, came to pay his reſpects to the ambaſſador, who gave him a friendly reception, and kept him to dinner. He was a merry old man, near fourſcore, but ſo vigorous, that he could mount a horſe with as much agility as many young men. He was accompanied with five ſons, and many attendants, who treated him with equal reſpect as a king; and even his ſons would not ſit down in his preſence, till he deſired them. I confeſs it gave me great pleaſure to ſee the decency with which they behaved. One of our company, a pretty fat man, aſked the Tayſha what he ſhould do in order to be as lean as he was? The old man replied in theſe few words, "Eat leſs, and work more:" A ſaying worthy of Hippocrates himſelf. In his youth he had been engaged in many battles with the Chineſe, whom he held in great contempt. As he was a keen ſportſman, the ambaſſador made an appointment with him for a grand hunt-

ing match. After which he and his retinue returned to their tents.

The 15th, we dined at Strealka with the commiſſary, Mr Stepnikoff, of the caravan going to China. Strealka is ſituated, as I formerly obſerved, about three or four miles up the river from Selinginſky, in a fruitful plain of a triangular figure, formed by the conflux of two fine rivers; the Strealka, running from the eaſt, and the Selinga, from the ſouth. This would have been the ſtrongeſt and moſt beautiful ſituation of any in this province, for the town of Selinginſky. I am informed, that the founders had a view to this delightful place; but the choice was determined againſt them by ſuperſtitious lots, to which it was referred. This method of chooſing ſituations by lot has hurt many noble cities, and rendered the work of ages ineffectual to remedy the error.

The ſame evening we returned, by water, to Selinginſky; and next day went a hunting to the weſt of the Selinga. We had

had about two hundred Coſſacks along with us, who followed the common method of ranging the woods, mentioned above. We killed ſix roe-bucks, and many hares. In the evening, we pitched our tents about a fountain, and feaſted on veniſon.

The 16th, early, we left the woods to our right, and deſcended into a barren plain, where we found great flocks of antelopes. Our people killed about twenty of them. Theſe animals avoid the woods, and frequent the open plains and deſerts. They are exceedingly ſwift and watchful; and ſo far reſemble ſheep, that, if one breaks through the circle, the whole flock follows, though an hundred horſemen were in the way, which proves the deſtruction of many of theſe creatures. The noiſe of the arrows, with which they are hunted, contributes much to their confuſion. The heads of theſe arrows are broad, and fixed in a round bit of bone, with two holes in it,

it, which make them whiſtle as they fly through the air.

At noon, we ſet up our tents near a lake of brackiſh water called Solonoy-oſera, or the ſalt lake. Round the edge lies a thick ſcurf of ſalt, as white as ſnow, which the inhabitants gather for uſe. Here we found great flocks of water-fowl; ſuch as ſwans, geeſe, ducks. The weather being very hot, we remained till next day.

The 17th, we hunted along the ſame waſte plain, directing our courſe to the ſouth, towards the river Selinga. This day alſo we had very good ſport. In the afternoon, we pitched our tents near a ſpring of freſh water, which is no ſmall rarity in theſe parched deſerts, and is as much regarded here, as a good inn would be in other parts of the world. I found at this place a prickly ſhrub, about three feet high, with a beautiful ſmooth bark as yellow as gold.

The 18th, in the morning, we had terrible flaſhes of lightning, accompanied with thunder,

thunder, and heavy ſhowers of hail and rain, which determined us to leave the plains, and return, by the ſhorteſt road, to Selinginſky. Beſides the game already mentioned, we found many large buſtards, which haunt the open country. As it is a very large bird, and riſes ſlowly, our light horſemen killed ſeveral of them with their arrows.

The 24th, arrived an officer from the court of Pekin, ſent on purpoſe to diſcover the number and quality of the embaſſy. This gentleman, whoſe name was Tuliſhin, was a Mantſhu Tartar by birth, and a member of the tribunal for weſtern affairs, with which he was very well acquainted. Theſe officers are called Surgutſky by the Mongalls, and by the Europeans Mandarin, a Portugueſe word derived from *mando*. He had formerly been in this country, and had learned the Ruſſian language. He pretended to have been employed on ſome buſineſs with the Tuſh-du-Chan at Urga, and, hearing of the ambaſſador's arrival,

rival, had come to pay his reſpects to him. It was, however, well known, that he was ſent to inquire whether the ambaſſador came on a friendly errand. He was received very kindly; and, after he had ſtaid three days, and made his obſervations, returned very well ſatisfied. At his departure, he told the ambaſſador, that orders would ſoon be given for his reception on the frontiers; but theſe could not be iſſued till his arrival at court, becauſe on his report the whole affair depended. This wiſe and cautious nation, jealous of all the world, ſuffer none to enter their territories but ſuch as bring friendly meſſages. By this circumſtance we were confined ſome time longer at Selinginſky.

I ſhall now give a deſcription of the courſe of the Selinga, according to the beſt information I could procure from thoſe who had been at its ſource. The Selinga is formed of two other rivers, called the Idyr and the Tzolato, coming from the mountains of Kungay, far to the ſouth-

ward

ward of this place. It is afterwards joined by two inconſiderable rivers, the Orchon from the ſouth-eaſt, and the Tzida from the ſouth-weſt, and laſtly by the Strealka from the eaſt, a little above the town of Selinginſky. At this place it is at leaſt twice the breadth of the river Thames, and is navigable a great way above it. The courſe now is due north, till it diſcharges itſelf into the Baykall lake. The ſource of this river is eſtimated at the diſtance of ten or twelve days journey above Selinginſky, which is the common method of computation in this country. It is plentifully furniſhed with variety of excellent fiſh. The omuly, which I formerly deſcribed, come in vaſt ſhoals from the Baykall in autumn up this river to ſpawn; after which, they return to the ſea ſo weak that many of them are carried down floating on the ſurface of the ſtream. During the progreſs of the omuly up the river, the inhabitants of the adjacent villages aſſemble with their nets, and catch as many of them

as

as they pleaſe. On this occaſion the poor take what they can uſe, and the reſt are left upon the banks. Theſe fiſhes advance up the river about ten miles a-day. On their firſt appearance, the report is ſoon ſpread over the country, and, in two or three hours, the people catch as many as they need, either for preſent uſe or winter proviſions. This fiſh is very agreeable food, either freſh or ſalted. It is obſerved, they are much better and fatter the nearer they are caught to the ſea; a plain argument, that, were they caught in the ſea, they would ſtill be preferable to any caught in the river. I have often thought, what ineſtimable treaſure theſe omuly would produce in other parts of the world, whereas here, the conſumption being ſmall, they are little valued. It is remarkable, that the omuly are not to be found at any ſeaſon in the Angara, or other rivers to the north of the Baykall.

July 5th, the Tayſha-Batyr arrived, in conſequence of his appointment with the ambaſſador,

ambaſſador, and brought along with him three hundred men, well mounted, for the chace. This old gentleman had the appellation of Batyr; a title of great reſpect among the Mongalls. It ſignifies a hero, and is conferred only on thoſe who have ſignalized themſelves by their courage and conduct in the field of battle. Beſides theſe Mongalls, we carried with us fifty of our coſſacks and our tents, as we propoſed to be abroad ſome days.

Early on the 6th, we took our way to the eaſtward, over high hills, and through tall woods, having almoſt no underwood to incommode the horſes, or interrupt our view, which made it very pleaſant. After riding a few miles, the Tayſha, being maſter of the chace, ordered his men to extend their lines. The Tayſha and we were in the center, and often ſaw the game paſs us, purſued by the horſemen, at full ſpeed, without the leaſt noiſe, but the whiſtling of arrows. The horſes, being accuſtomed to this kind of ſport, follow the game as a

greyhound does a hare; ſo that the riders lay the bridles on their necks, and attend to nothing but their bows and arrows. One may eaſily imagine the exquiſite entertainment, in ſeeing ſeveral of theſe horſemen in purſuit of an elk or ſtag through the valleys. When the animal is driven from the woods, it flies for ſafety to the neareſt rocks. Some of theſe creatures are nearly as large and ſtrong as the horſes that hunt them. The ſtags are of two kinds; one called zuber, the ſame with the German crownhirſh, but ſomewhat larger. The zuber is large and beautiful, and carries its head almoſt upright as it runs, which prevents its horns being entangled with branches of trees. There are none of them in Ruſſia, nor even in Siberia, except about the Baykall lake, and eaſtward from it; the places farther to the north being too cold for them. The elk is larger than the ſtag, and ſtronger made, having alſo long branchy horns, but a little flat.

Tired

Tired with ſport, we left the hills in the afternoon, and came down into a fine valley, where we pitched our tents near a pure brook. The Tayſha then ordered all the dead game to be brought before him, and ranged in proper order. We found that this day we killed no leſs than five large elks, four ſtags, a dozen roe-bucks, ſeveral wolves and foxes, beſides fawns and hares.

The Tayſha cauſed the game to be divided among the huntſmen, who began immediately to dreſs it, ſome of them by boiling, others by broiling, and eat it without either bread or ſalt. The tails of the ſtags, which by theſe people are reckoned very delicate, fell to the Tayſha's ſhare. He cut them into ſlices, and eat them raw. I eat a bit of one of them, and thought it very palatable. The taſte reſembled nothing ſo much as that of freſh caviare. After we had feaſted on variety of excellent veniſon, for we had no other proviſions, we went to reſt, well ſatisfied with the diverſion of the day.

July

July 7th, early in the morning, we left the plains, and directed our courſe eaſtward, in the ſame order we obſerved the preceding day. As our ſport was much the ſame, I need not mention the particulars. About noon we pitched our tents, near a ſpring of freſh water, in a valley where the graſs was about two feet long. This circumſtance is a proof of the goodneſs of the ſoil, which, in my opinion, cannot fail, if properly cultivated, to produce any kind of grain. As the weather was exceſſively hot, we ſtaid in this place till next day.

July 8th, we continued our ſport in the woods till noon, when we came into an extenſive plain, in which we ſet up our tents, near a ſpring of brackiſh water. In this place we obſerved ſeveral flocks of antelopes, which we reſerved for next day's hunting.

In the morning, our Tayſha diſpatched ſome of his horſemen to the tops of the hills, in order to diſcover where the antelopes

lopes were feeding; which, as I formerly obſerved, are the moſt watchful, and, at the ſame time, the ſwifteſt animals in the world. When they returned, we extended our wings to a great diſtance, that we might ſurround theſe creatures with the greater eaſe; and, before noon, our people killed above twenty of them. After which we returned to our tents that were left ſtanding in the morning.

July 10th, we took leave of the Tayſha, whoſe tents were to the eaſt of this place, and returned next day to Selinginſky.

During this ſhort excurſion, I could not enough admire the beauty of the country through which we paſſed. The gentle riſing of the hills, many of which have their tops only covered with wood, and the fertility of the vales, contribute to form one of the moſt delightful landſcapes the world can afford. To this may be added the temperature and dryneſs of the climate, in which reſpect this far exceeds any country with which I am acquainted. After mid-

ſummer

ſummer there is almoſt no rain till December, when the ſnow falls, and in ſuch moderate quantities that it does not hinder the cattle from lying abroad all the winter.

In ſurveying theſe fertile plains and pleaſant woods, I have often entertained myſelf with painting, in my own imagination, the neat villages, country-ſeats, and farm-houſes, which, in proceſs of time, may be erected on the banks of the rivers, and brows of the hills. There is here waſte land enough to maintain, with eaſy labour, ſeveral European nations, who are at preſent confined to barren and ungrateful ſoils; and, with regard to the Mongalls, whoſe honeſty and ſimplicity of manners are not unamiable, I ſhould like them very well for neighbours.

From what I have read of North America, I am of opinion, that this country reſembles none ſo much as ſome of our colonies in that quarter of the world, particularly the inland parts of Pennſylvania and Maryland. Both countries lye nearly in the

ſame

ſame latitude; in the one we find great lakes and mighty rivers; in the other, the Baykall Sea and rivers, which for the length of their courſe and quantity of water, may be ranked with any in the weſtern world.

Having reſted ourſelves a few days after our fatigue, on the 16th of July, we ſet out on another hunting-match, attended by our own coſſacks, and a few of the neighbouring Mongalls. We went on this occaſion farther northward, and nearer to the Baykall lake than in our former expedition. Our ſport was almoſt of the ſame kind as already deſcribed. I ſhall only add, that both the ſtag and elk ſhed their horns once a year; at which time they retire to thickets and ſolitary places, till their horns begin to ſpring again. It is ſurpriſing that animals ſo large, with ſuch prodigious weight of branchy horns, ſhould run, with almoſt incredible ſpeed, through the thickeſt woods, without entangling themſelves: But, to avoid this misfortune, they point their noſes always parallel to the horizon.

When

When either the elk or ſtag are cloſely attacked, they make a vigorous defence both with horns and hoofs. At rutting time eſpecially, theſe creatures are ſo very furious, that it is extremely dangerous for any perſon to approach their haunts; they will then run at a man full ſpeed, and, if he eſcapes being wounded by their horns, will trample him to death with their ſharp hoofs. As the weather was exceſſively hot, we kept the field only two days, and then returned to Selinginſky.

July 20th, another Mandarin arrived from Pekin, accompanied by an officer from Arga, who brought a letter to the ambaſſador from the Tuſh-du-Chan, acquainting him, that he might ſoon expect a perſon, properly authoriſed, to conduct him to the imperial city. No news could be more agreeable. We hoped now to be ſoon releaſed from this ſolitary place, and arrive at the end of our journey. We were indeed well enough lodged, and wanted neither the neceſſaries nor conveni-

encies

encies of life. The abundance of rural diverſions which this place afforded, coinciding happily with the genius of moſt of our gentlemen, and the harmony that ſubſiſted among the retinue, though compoſed of people from moſt nations in Europe, and ſome from Aſia, contributed not a little to our paſſing the time very agreeably. Notwithſtanding theſe advantages, and the affability and courteous behaviour of the ambaſſador, which heightened them all, we were uneaſy at being detained ſo long on the frontiers. We were apprehenſive that ſome accident might happen to prevent our journey, eſpecially as it was reported among the Mongalls, that the Emperor of China, being far advanced in years, was ſometimes ſick, and not diſpoſed to receive foreign miniſters.

The 24th, there fell ſuch a ſhower of hail-ſtones as no man then alive had ever ſeen. It was happy for us we were not then abroad, as the open field affords no kind of ſhelter. The hail lay ſome days in

the woods and cooled the air, which before that time had been exceſſively hot. This day the Kutuchtu ſent two lamas to compliment the ambaſſador, to wiſh him a good journey, and a happy ſight of the Emperor, or Boghdoy-chan, as he is called by theſe people.

Auguſt 9th, a courier arrived from Pekin, who told the ambaſſador that he had paſſed our conductor on the road, and that we ſhould now prepare for our journey to the capital, as that gentleman would arrive in a few days.

On the 24th, our conductor, called Lomy, at laſt arrived. He was by birth a Mantſhu Tartar, and a member of the court for the weſtern department. After remaining with us for ſome days, he returned to Yolla, a place upon the border, in order to procure horſes and camels for our journey.

September 8th, we ſent our baggage by water to Strealka, and next day we followed it. We lived in tents, while we ſtaid at this

this place, till horſes and camels were got ready. In the mean time, our people were employed in packing up the baggage into proper loads for camels. Strealka, I formerly obſerved, is the place where his Majeſty's commiſſary of the caravan has his abode, and the government of Siberia their ſtore-houſes. I imagine, therefore, it will not be improper, before we proceed, to give ſome account of the trade carried on from this place.

Formerly the fur trade was free to all his Majeſty's ſubjects, both Ruſſians and Tartars. The merchants repaired to Siberia at the proper ſeaſons, where they bought, at cheap rates, all the rich furs they could find, and diſpoſed of them in Perſia, Turkey, and Poland, at a price much below the real value. The government of Siberia perceived a very conſiderable diminution of the revenue in that country, and ſoon diſcovered the true cauſe of it; which was, that a great part of the furs belonging to his Majeſty remained unſold. Upon inquiry,

quiry, it appeared that this was owing to the foreign markets being ſupplied with theſe commodities at low rates, by the ſubjects, before the goods belonging to the government could be expoſed to ſale. The government of Siberia repreſented to his Majeſty the loſs of ſo conſiderable a branch of his revenue; in conſequence of which, an order was immediately iſſued, prohibiting all private perſons for the future to export ſables in particular. Since this regulation took place, the government have ſent their own furs, generally once in three years, by caravans to China. The value of one of theſe caravans is reckoned to amount to four or five thouſand roubles, and yields a return of at leaſt double that ſum. The Emperor of China, from regard to the friendſhip and good neighbourhood of his Majeſty, gives the caravans free quarters, and liberty to diſpoſe of their goods, and buy others, without exacting any impoſt. At firſt the Emperor not only gave the caravan free quarters, but alſo maintained,

maintained, at his own charge, both men and horſes during their ſtay in Pekin. This laſt expreſſion of his Majeſty's bounty is, however, now withdrawn.

September 15th, our conductor having acquainted the ambaſſador that the horſes and camels were ready, our baggage was deſpatched to the frontiers, eſcorted by our own ſoldiers and ſome Coſſacks; tho' indeed there was no great occaſion for any guard, as the Mongalls ſeem to have little uſe for any thing that belonged to us.

After dining with the commiſſary of the caravan at Strealka, on the 18th, we left that place in the evening, accompanied with the commiſſary and moſt of the officers at Selinginſky. After we had travelled about twenty Engliſh miles to the ſouth-eaſt, through fine plains, covered with exceeding long graſs, we arrived at the end of the firſt ſtage called Kolludtzy, where we found our tents, which had been ſent off in the morning, ready for our reception,

ception. This day we ſaw ſome ſcattered tents of Mongalians with their flocks.

Next day we travelled about twenty miles farther to a ſingle houſe, built by the commiſſary for a ſhade to his cattle in winter. We hunted all the way through a pleaſant country, interſperſed with little hills covered with wood, but ſaw as few inhabitants as the day before.

The 20th, about noon, we reached a place called Saratzyn, or the New Moon, ſituated on the bank of a rivulet of the ſame name. This rivulet is the boundary between the Ruſſian and Chineſe territories, and ſeparates two of the moſt mighty monarchies in the world. The diſtance between Selinginſky and this place is computed to be about one hundred and four verſt, nearly ſeventy Engliſh miles.

The conductor was encamped on the eaſt ſide of the rivulet, and we pitched our tents on the other. The ground on both ſides riſes a little, and the ſoil ſeems to be extremely good. The graſs is rank and thick,

and

and as the ſeaſon is very dry, would, with little labour, make excellent hay. This graſs is often ſet on fire by the Mongalls in the ſpring during high winds. At ſuch times it burns moſt furiouſly, running like wild-fire, and ſpreading its flames to the diſtance of perhaps ten or twenty miles, till its progreſs is interrupted by ſome river or barren hill. The impetuoſity of theſe flames, their ſmoke and crackling noiſe, cannot eaſily be conceived by thoſe who have not ſeen them. When any perſon finds himſelf to the leeward of them, the only method by which he can ſave himſelf from their fury, is to kindle immediately the graſs where he ſtands, and follow his own fire. For this purpoſe, every perſon is provided with flints, ſteel, and tinder. The reaſon why the Mongalls ſet fire to the graſs, is to procure early paſture for their cattle. The aſhes left upon the ground ſink into the earth at the melting of the ſnow, and prove an excellent manure; ſo that the graſs in the ſpring riſes on the lands,

lands, which have been prepared in this manner, as thick as a field of wheat. Caravans, travellers with merchandiſe, but eſpecially armies, never encamp upon this rank graſs. And there are ſeveral inſtances of conſiderable bodies of men being put in confuſion, and even defeated, by the enemy's ſetting fire to the graſs.

Before I leave the Ruſſian territories, I ſhall give ſome account of the marches between theſe two famous empires. The frontier, according to the beſt information I could procure, begins a great way weſtward of this place, near the ſource of the river Dzida; from thence it proceeds to the eaſt, croſſing the Selinga, and runs along the tops of the hills, inclining ſometimes to the north, and ſometimes to the ſouth, till it meets with the rivulet Saratzyn. It runs then in a very irregular line, varying its direction according to the courſe of the rivers and brooks, or from the top of one hill to ſome other remarkable point in view, pointing in general towards the north-

north-eaſt, till it ends at the river Argun, which, together with the Ingoda, forms the Amoor. This boundary includes a vaſt tract of excellent land on the Ruſſian ſide; and that part of the Mongalls who inhabit it, being ſtout men, and living much at eaſe, will in time become a numerous people.

The marches were ſettled upon the preſent footing about twenty-five years ago, on the following occaſion: The Mongalls, on the Chineſe ſide, alledged, that their countrymen, ſubjects of Ruſſia, encroached on their borders, which created ſome diſputes between the two nations. The cauſes of this miſunderſtanding being repreſented to the two courts, it was agreed to ſend miniſters, with full powers to terminate the affair in an amicable manner. His Majeſty's miniſter, Theodore Alexiovitz Golovin, met the Chineſe plenipotentiaries, on the frontiers, in the neighbourhood of Nertſhinſky, a conſiderable town belonging to Ruſſia, near the river Amoor.

All matters were ſoon accommodated, to the mutual ſatisfaction of both parties, on the footing of *uti poſſidetis*; *i. e.* each of the parties retaining the people and territories that then belonged to them.

This determination kept all quiet for ſome time. The Chineſe, however, ſoon appeared to be diſſatisfied with the deciſion, and want to have the marches reviewed; to which, in my opinion, the Ruſſians will not eaſily aſſent.

The 21ſt, the conductor came to congratulate the ambaſſador on his arrival at the borders, and acquainted him, that the horſes and camels being ready, he might proceed when he pleaſed. I cannot omit an inconſiderable circumſtance that happened at this place, as it ſtrongly repreſents the caution and prudence of the Chineſe. Our conductor, having ſeen ſome women walking in the fields, aſked the ambaſſador who they were, and whither they were going? He was told they belonged to the retinue,

retinue, and were going along with it to China.

He replied, they had women enough in Pekin already; and as there never had been an European woman in China, he could not be anſwerable for introducing the firſt, without a ſpecial order from the Emperor. But if his Excellency would wait for an anſwer, he would deſpatch a courier to court for that purpoſe. The return of this meſſenger could not be ſooner than ſix weeks; it was therefore thought more expedient to ſend back the women to Selinginſky, with the waggons that brought our baggage to this place.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VII.

### *From paſſing the Saratzyn, and entering the Chineſe territories, to our arrival at the wall of China.*

THE 22d of September, having loaded the camels with our baggage, and procured carriages for the boxes that contained his Majeſty's preſents to the Emperor, which were too large for camels to bear, we mounted and paſſed the Saratzyn, and ſoon entered the Chineſe territories. We travelled fifteen miles, when we arrived, about evening, at the river Orchon, running with a ſmooth ſtream to the north.

The

The carriages retarded our progreſs greatly, as the horſes were ſprightly, and unaccuſtomed to draught.

This day we commenced gueſts of the Emperor of China, who entertains all ambaſſadors, and bears their expences, from the day they enter his dominions, till the time they quit them again. Our retinue conſiſted of about one hundred perſons, who were allowed fifteen ſheep every day. The overplus of this large allowance was given to the Mongalls who drove the camels. Beſides mutton and beef, there is no other kind of proviſion to be found, till you come within the wall of China. The mutton is of a middle ſize; but, I muſt confeſs, exceeding fine. The conductor was attended by an officer from the Tuſh-du-Chan, who procured, from the Mongalls encamped neareſt our road, what ſheep we wanted. The camels were very tractable, and ſtooped to take on their loads. But the horſes were at firſt very unmanageable. Many of them had never before been

been employed for any uſe, and were ſaddled with great difficulty, but mounted with much more; for the very ſmell of our cloaths, which they perceived to be different from that of the Mongalls, their maſters, made them ſnort and ſpring with great fury. They were eaſily managed, notwithſtanding, when we got upon their backs.

Our road this day lay through fine plains and vallies, covered with rank graſs; but not a ſingle tent was to be ſeen. I inquired why ſuch a fine ſoil was without inhabitants, and was told, that the Chineſe had forbid the Mongalls to encamp ſo near the Ruſſian borders, for fear of being allured to paſs over to their territories, as many had formerly done. Theſe fruitful vallies are ſurrounded with pleaſant hills, of eaſy aſcent, whoſe ſummits are covered with tufts of trees. Many of theſe tufts being of a circular figure, and having no underwood, appear as if they had been planted and pruned by art; others are irregular,

and

and ſometimes a ridge of trees runs from one hill to another. Theſe objects afford a proſpect ſo pleaſing to the eye, and ſo ſeldom to be found, that one cannot help being charmed. And this pleaſure is ſtill heightened by the gentle-flowing rivulets, abounding with fiſh, and plenty of game in the vallies, and among the trees.

The 23d, we ſet out early, and came to a rivulet called Ira, running to the north-weſt, till it falls into the Orchon, which we paſſed, and pitched our tents on the other ſide. The rank graſs by accident took fire, and had not water been at hand to extinguiſh it, and the weather very calm, the conſequences might have been fatal. We travelled farther this day than the former, as fewer inconveniencies aroſe from the reſtifneſs of the horſes.

The 24th, we continued our journey towards the ſouth-eaſt, along ſmooth roads, through a pleaſant country; and, at evening, reached a rivulet called Shara, or the yellow rivulet, on the banks of which we

ſet

ſet up our tents. The vallies now were more contracted, and leſs wood upon the hills than formerly.

The 25th, we came to a rivulet called Kara, or the black rivulet, from the colour of the water, which is tinged by the richneſs of the ſoil.

The 26th, we proceeded. The country retained much the ſame appearance, and the weather was very fine; but not a ſingle inhabitant was yet to be ſeen. In the evening, I walked from our tents, with ſome of our company, to the top of a neighbouring hill, where I found many plants of excellent rhubarb; and, by the help of a ſtick, dug up as much of it as I wanted.

On theſe hills are a great number of animals called marmots, of a browniſh colour, having feet like a badger, and nearly of the ſame ſize. They make deep burrows on the declivities of the hills; and it is ſaid, that in winter they continue in theſe holes, for a certain time, even without food. At this ſeaſon, however, they ſit or lie

lie near their burrows, keeping a ſtrict watch; and, at the approach of danger, rear themſelves upon their hind-feet, giving a loud whiſtle, like a man, to call in the ſtragglers; and then drop into their holes in a moment.

I ſhould not have mentioned an animal ſo well known as the marmot, had it not been on account of the rhubarb. Wherever you ſee ten or twenty plants growing, you are ſure of finding ſeveral burrows under the ſhades of their broad ſpreading leaves. Perhaps they may ſometimes eat the leaves and roots of this plant. However, it is probable the manure they leave about the roots contributes not a little to its increaſe; and their caſting up the earth makes it ſhoot out young buds and multiply. This plant does not run and ſpread itſelf like docks, and others of the ſame ſpecies, but grows in tufts at uncertain diſtances, as if the ſeeds had been dropped with deſign. It appears that the Mongalls never accounted it worth culti-

vating, but that the world is obliged to the marmots for the quantities ſcattered at random in many parts of this country; for whatever part of the ripe ſeed happens to be blown among the thick graſs can very ſeldom reach the ground, but muſt there wither and die; whereas, ſhould it fall among the looſe earth, thrown up by the marmots, it immediately takes root, and produces a new plant.

After digging and gathering the rhubarb, the Mongalls cut the large roots into ſmall pieces, in order to make them dry more readily. In the middle of every piece they ſcoop a hole, through which a cord is drawn, in order to ſuſpend them in any convenient place. They hang them, for moſt part, about their tents, and ſometimes on the horns of their ſheep. This is a moſt pernicious cuſtom, as it deſtroys ſome of the beſt part of the root; for all about the hole is rotten and uſeleſs; whereas, were people rightly informed how to dig and dry this plant, there would not be one pound

pound of refuſe in an hundred, which would ſave a great deal of trouble and expence, that much diminiſh the profits on this commodity. At preſent, the dealers in this article think theſe improvements not worthy of their attention, as their gains are more conſiderable on this than on any other branch of trade. Perhaps the government may hereafter think it proper to make ſome regulations with regard to this matter.

I have been more particular in deſcribing the growth and management of the rhubarb; becauſe I never met with an author or perſon who could give a ſatisfactory account where, or how it grows. I am perſuaded, that, in ſuch a dry climate as this, it might eaſily be ſo cultivated as to produce any quantity that could be wanted.

I omit any computation of the diſtances of places along this road, as the whole of it from the borders to Pekin has been meaſured by a wheel, or machine, given to the caravan

caravan by the governour of Siberia for that purpoſe. I ſhall afterwards ſubjoin the exact diſtances taken from this meaſurement.

The 27th and 28th we purſued the ſame road, over hills and through vallies: For, tho' few travel this way, the caravans, with their heavy carriages, leave ſuch marks as are not ſoon effaced. It is only of late that the caravans travelled this road. Formerly they went farther to the north, by a Ruſſian town called Nertzinſky, and thence to a Chineſe city called Naun. That road is more convenient than the preſent, as it lies through places better inhabited; but the preſent is ſhorter, and therefore taken by moſt travellers.

The 29th, we reached a river called Buroy, where we lodged. At this dry ſeaſon all theſe rivers are fordable; and they abound with ſturgeon and other fiſh. Next morning, Mr Venant, our chief cook, dropped down, as he was coming out of his tent, and immediately expired, notwithſtanding all poſſible care was taken for his

his recovery. We interred him as decently as time and circumſtances would admit, and proceeded to a river called Borgualty, where we pitched our tents for this night.

October 1ſt, after a long day's journey, we reached a rivulet called Koyra. The face of the country appeared nearly the ſame as formerly.

The 2d, after another long march, we came to the banks of the river Tola, the largeſt we had ſeen ſince we left the Selinga.

Next day we croſſed the Tola at a pretty deep ford, where the river was in breadth about the flight of an arrow at point blank. It was noon before our camels got over, and too late to proceed. We were therefore obliged to ſet up our tents on the eaſt bank of the river, which was overgrown with tall oziers.

Here our conductor furniſhed us with freſh horſes and camels. From the borders to this place our ſtages were regulated by

Chelo-tologoy, of pretty freſh water. The country was quite level, and appeared to the eye as plain as the ſea. The ſoil was dry, barren, and gravelly, and neither tree nor buſh to be ſeen; a proſpect not very agreeable,

The 6th, early in the morning, we proceeded eaſtward, through the ſame ſort of flat country. The weather was very fine, and the roads excellent. In the evening, we arrived at a pool, called Tylack, of brackiſh water, where we remained the following night. This day we ſaw ſeveral large flocks of antelopes, and ſome Mongalls in their tents, which was no diſagreeable object in this continued plain. We paſſed few of theſe tents without viſiting them, where we always found an hoſpitable reception, and were entertained with ſome zaturan, a kind of tea which I formerly deſcribed. And, if we happened to ſtay till our baggage was gone out of ſight, the landlord conducted us by the ſhorteſt

way

way to the ſprings that terminated the next ſtage.

The next day, we came to the wells called Gachun. Our biſcuit being now ſpent, we were reduced to live on mutton only, during the reſt of our journey thro' this deſert; which we accounted no great hardſhip, as it was extremely fine. It is not a little ſurpriſing, that, notwithſtanding the barren appearance of this unſheltered plain, the cattle are in good condition, but particularly the ſheep. The ſhort graſs, though in many places thinly ſcattered, muſt be of a very nouriſhing quality. This will naturally proceed from the climate, and the ſoil, which every where partakes of a nitrous quality, as plainly appears from the ſcurf of ſalt round the edges of the lakes and ponds, and the taſte of the water, generally brackiſh in the ſprings and pits.

The 8th, our conductor furniſhed us with a freſh ſet of cattle, which detained us later than our uſual time of ſetting out.

This day, the ſoil was very much inclined to gravel, containing a number of red and yellow pebbles, many of which being tranſparent, made a fine appearance while the ſun ſhone. We were informed there were ſometimes ſtones of value found here, which ſo much excited our curioſity, that each of us, every day, picked up a conſiderable quantity. On examination, moſt of them were thrown away, as altogether uſeleſs; the few we thought proper to retain were wrought into very good ſeals. A man might gather a buſhel of ſuch ſtones every day in this deſert. One of our people, a Grecian by birth, who underſtood ſomething of the nature of ſtones, found one that he called a yellow ſapphire, and valued it at fifty crowns. Perhaps theſe pebbles might be of that kind which the lapidaries call cornelian; for they are ſufficiently hard, and take a fine poliſh.

The 9th, we ſet out early, and travelled to a pool named Oko-toulgu. This day, a lama from the Kutuchtu, going to Pekin, joined

joined our company, who, by his habit and equipage, ſeemed to be a perſon of eminence. In marching along the tedious deſert, the converſation turned on a terrible earthquake, which happened during the month of July laſt in China, between the long wall and Pekin, and had laid in ruins ſeveral villages and walled towns, and buried many people in their ruins. The lama inquired what was the opinion of the learned men in Europe concerning the cauſe of this phaenomenon. We told him, it was commonly reckoned to be ſubterraneous fire; and then aſked, in our turn, to what cauſe ſuch extraordinary appearances were imputed by his countrymen? He replied, that ſome of their learned lamas had written, that God, after he had formed the earth, placed it on a golden frog; and, whenever this prodigious frog had occaſion to ſcratch its head, or ſtretch out its foot, that part of the earth immediately above was ſhaken. There was no reaſoning on a notion ſo fantaſtical; we therefore left the lama to

pleaſe

pleaſe himſelf with his hypotheſis, and turned the diſcourſe to ſome other ſubject.

The 10th, we came to the ſprings called Korpartu. The appearance of things this day were almoſt the ſame as on the preceding days. The ſoil appeared ſo barren, that none of the common methods of improvement could make it bear any kind of grain, or even alter its preſent condition. The diſpoſitions of its inhabitants, the Mongalls, ſeem wonderfully ſuited to their ſituation, as they appear more contented with their condition than thoſe who poſſeſs the moſt fruitful countries.

In the evening of the 11th, we arrived at Khododu, where we found the water clear, and pretty freſh, burſting, in a ſtrong ſpring, from the gravelly earth, and running in a ſtream to a conſiderable diſtance, till it loſes itſelf in the ſand. This was the firſt running water we had ſeen ſince we left the Tola. And we were as happy, while ſitting round this fountain, and broiling our mutton-chops, as others at a table plen-

plentifully furniſhed with Burgundy and Champaign. Our appetites were indeed very keen; to which daily exerciſe, the coldneſs of the air, and drinking nothing but water, greatly contributed.

Next morning, being the 12th, there was a little froſt upon the ground. Several flocks of gray plovers came to drink at the ſpring, of which our people killed as many as our preſent circumſtances required. Theſe poor harmleſs birds ſeemed inſenſible of danger; and, perhaps, they had never before heard the report of a gun; for, no ſooner was the piece fired, than they took a ſhort flight round the fountain, whiſtling as they flew, and immediately alighted to drink again. The plover is a pretty bird, and pleaſant to eat; and the ſoles of its feet are as hard as ſo much horn, which prevent its being hurt by the ſtones or gravel. In the evening, we came to the wells called Bouk-horlike, without any thing material happening, or any difference on the face of the country.

The

The 13th, we continued our journey to the wells of Buduruy, where we were again furniſhed with freſh horſes and camels.

The 14th, we came to a place called Kadan-Kachu, where we were obliged to dig a pit, four feet deep, in order to procure water; which was very bad, having both a diſagreeable ſmell, and bitter taſte; but was drinkable, when boiled with ſome tea. We could, however, get none for our cattle, as the high wind filled the pits with ſand as faſt as we could dig them. This ſand is of a whitiſh colour, and ſo light and dry, that it is driven by the winds into your face and eyes, and becomes very diſagreeable. Moſt of our people, indeed, were provided with a piece of net-work, made of horſe-hair, which covered their eyes, and is very uſeful in drifts, either of ſand or ſnow.

The 15th, we travelled over deep ſands; and in the evening arrived at other ſprings, called Tzagan-teggerick. The wind continuing

nuing high, it was with much difficulty we ſet up our tents. It is to be obſerved that, on theſe deep and light ſands, our European tents are of little uſe, as there is no earth in which the tent-pins can be faſtened. The Tartar tents are much preferable; for, their figure being round and taper, like a bee-hive, the wind takes but little hold of them, and they ſtand equally well on a ſandy, or on any other ſurface. They are, beſides, warmer, more eaſily erected, taken down, and tranſported.

The 16th, we left the deep ſand, and travelled along the ſame ſort of dry gravelly ground as formerly. In the evening, we pitched our tents at the ſprings called Sadjin. The variety of objects, in this dreary waſte, are ſo few, that in this, as well as in other reſpects, it much reſembles the ſea. Here one can ſee no farther than if he was placed on the ſurface of the water, out of ſight of land; the rounding of the globe, in both caſes, being the ſame. Sometimes, in the morning, I have been

been agreeably ſurpriſed in fancying I ſaw, at a ſmall diſtance, a fine river, having rows of trees growing upon its banks; but this was only a deception of the ſight, proceeding from the vapours magnifying ſome ſcattered ſhrubs into great trees.

The 17th, we came to ſome wells of very bad water, called Oudey, where we found freſh horſes and camels waiting for us. Our conductor reſolved to loſe no time, being apprehenſive that we might be overtaken in the deſert by the froſt and deep ſnow, which uſually happen at this ſeaſon. Such an event would have retarded our march, and incommoded us not a little in many reſpects. We therefore travelled as long ſtages, as the convenience of water, and the ſtrength of our cattle, would permit.

The 18th, after a long day's journey, we came to the wells called Ulan-kala. We found, almoſt every day, Mongalls in their tents, which ſtood like ſo many hives, diſperſed through this ſolitary plain.

The

The 19th, we mounted again, and travelled to the ſprings named Tzilan-teggerick. This day we ſaw ſeveral flocks of antelopes; and, indeed, few days paſſed in which we did not ſee ſome of theſe animals.

The 20th, we came to a place called Ourandabu. The weather ſtill continued fair, the ſky clear, and the mornings froſty. The water at this place was tolerable; but we were obliged to dig for it. When it happened that we had a long ſtage from one ſpring to another, for fear of coming too late, we uſually ſent a couple of men before us, in order to gather fewel, and to dig pits, that the water might have time to ſettle before our arrival.

The 21ſt, we proceeded, and in the evening arrived at a lake of ſalt-water. After digging, however, we found ſome freſher. Were it not that theſe lakes and pits are ſcattered through this deſert, it muſt have been altogether uninhabited, either by man or beaſt. This conſideration, among

many others, has often led me to admire the infinite wiſdom of Almighty God, in the diſpenſations of his providence, for the ſupport of all his creatures.

In my opinion, theſe ſprings are produced by the rains and melted ſnow in the ſpring; for the water, ſinking in the ſand, is thereby prevented from being exhaled, in ſummer, by the heat of the ſun, which muſt be very ſcorching in this deſert, in which there is not the leaſt ſhade to be found.

The 22d, we quitted the ſalt lake, in a cold froſty morning, and a ſtrong northerly wind, which was very diſagreeable. At evening we reached the wells of Kulat. Theſe pits take their names from the quality of the water, as ſalt, ſour, ſweet, bitter, or from the different tribes of people who inhabit the country in the neighbourhood.

In the midſt of our fatigues, we had the ſatisfaction to be among a friendly people,

who

who did every thing in their power to leſſen our wants.

Next day, we reached the wells of Mingat. The weather, though cold, was not unpleaſant. And, the 24th, having got freſh horſes and camels, we came, in the evening, to a pond of brackiſh water, called Korunteer, upon the extremity of a diſmal bank of ſand, running acroſs our road.

The day following, we entered on the ſand-bank, along a narrow and crooked paſſage between two hillocks. Every one prayed for calm weather while we travelled over the ſand; which put me in mind of being at ſea. We continued our journey through deep ſand till about noon, when all our horſes and camels being tired, we halted in a hollow place, where we dug, and found very bad water. We remained here till next morning.

Our cattle being a little refreſhed, tho' they had been very indifferently fed among the ſand, where nothing was to be ſeen but ſome tufts of withered graſs, we ſet out again.

gain. Along this bank there is not the leaſt track or path of any kind; for the ſmalleſt blaſt of wind immediately effaces it, and renders all the ſurface ſmooth.

We had gone but a few miles, when moſt of our people were obliged to alight, and walk on foot, the horſes being quite tired with the deepneſs of the ſand; which made our progreſs extremely ſlow. The weather, fortunately, was ſtill very calm. About noon, we pitched our tents in a hollow place, encompaſſed with high hillocks of ſand. I obſerved that, in the open deſert, we had already paſſed, the proſpect was much confined; but here it was quite ſtraitened; for, if you aſcended one of theſe mounts, you could ſee nothing but mount riſing above mount, like ſo many ſugar-loaves, or rather like ſo many cupolas.

In the evening it began to blow a little at north-eaſt, which drove about the light ſand like ſnow; but, about midnight, the wind roſe to ſuch an height, that all our tents were overſet at once, and our beds filled

filled with ſand. As it was near morning, we thought it not worth while to pitch them again. We therefore prepared ourſelves to ſet out at the dawn, in hopes of getting over the ſand-bank before night; which, by riding and walking by turns, in order to haſten our progreſs, we happily effected; and, in the evening, reached the ſprings of Kochatu.

At the place where we paſſed the ſand, it was not above twenty Engliſh miles in breadth, which took us up three days. We could have travelled four times that diſtance on the plain, with more eaſe both to ourſelves and cattle. I am informed this bank of ſand runs a great way ſouthward, and, in ſome places, is above thirty leagues broad. They, whoſe buſineſs calls them often to croſs the ſands, have thin leather coats made on purpoſe, and round pieces of glaſs tied before their eyes.

This ſand-bank appears like the waves of the ſea; for the hillocks, ſome of which are about twenty feet of perpendicular height,

height, are of ſo light a nature, that the wind carries them from place to place, levelling one, and forming another: And hence it is eaſy to conceive, that a weary traveller, lying down on the lee-ſide of one of theſe hillocks, might, in a few hours, be buried in the ſand; which is reported to have often happened in this and other ſandy deſerts.

The 28th, we proceeded along the plain to the ſprings called Chabertu. I cannot but take notice of the uncommon manner the people here have of killing their ſheep. They make a ſlit with a knife between two ribs, through which they put their hand, and ſqueeze the heart till the creature expire; by this method all the blood remains in the carcaſe. When the ſheep is dead, and hungry people cannot wait till the fleſh is regularly dreſſed, they generally cut out the biſcuit and rump, wool and all, and broil them on the coals; then ſcrape off the ſinged wool and eat them. This I have found by experience to be no diſa-

greeable

greeable morſel, even without any kind of ſauce.

The next day we travelled another ſtage to the wells of Saminſa, where we found better water than uſual. The length and thickneſs of the graſs ſhowed that the ſoil now began to mend. This day there fell ſome ſnow, and the wind was cold and northerly.

The 30th, we got freſh horſes, and proceeded to the ſprings of Krema. From the appearance of the graſs one would conclude, that the ſoil at this place was very fine. We ſaw great numbers of horſes belonging to the Emperor turned out to graze. Notwithſtanding all the haſte we had hitherto made, we were this day overtaken by a fall of ſnow, which proved very inconvenient, not ſo much on account of the cold, but it covered all fewel, ſo that we could find none to dreſs our victuals.

The 31ſt, we came to a place called Naringkaruſſu, where, to our great ſatisfaction, we found a ſmall brook of freſh water,

water, and ſome Mongalian huts. I obſerved, that, from the ſand-bank eaſtward, the ſoil becomes gradually better every day. This was now the fortieth day ſince we left the border; during which time we had not halted one day, nor ſeen a ſingle houſe, and the twentieth and eight from the time we quitted the river Tola, and entered the deſert, in which we had neither ſeen river, tree, buſh, nor mountain. Though we were obliged now and then to fetch a compaſs, on account of the watering places, yet in general our courſe deviated but little from the ſouth-eaſt point.

The 1ſt of November, we halted at this place, that we might have time to put things in order before we paſſed the long wall, which was now at no great diſtance.

Next day we proceeded, and about noon we could perceive the famous wall, running along the tops of the mountains, towards the north-eaſt. One of our people cried out Land, as if we had been all this while at ſea. It was now, as nearly as I can compute,

compute, about forty Engliſh miles from us, and appeared white at this diſtance. We could not this night reach the paſſage through the mountains, and therefore pitched our tents in the open plain as uſual. We now began to feel the effects of the cold; for the ſnow, continuing to lie upon the deſert, proved very inconvenient on many accounts, but particularly by retarding the progreſs of our heavy and cumberſome baggage. But we comforted ourſelves with the hopes of ſoon ſeeing an end of all our toils, and arriving in a rich and inhabited country; for, though all of our people were in good health, they began to be very weary of the deſert, and no wonder, as many of them had lain in the open field ever ſince we left Selinginſky.

November 3d, after travelling about an hour we paſſed the veſtiges of a camp, which ſeemed to have been regularly deſigned. I was informed that the Emperor encamped here, when he led his troops a-

gainſt the Mongalls, called by the miſſionaries in China the Weſtern Tartars.

The nearer we came to the mountains we were the more ſurpriſed at the ſight of the ſo much celebrated wall of China, commonly called for its length the endleſs wall. The appearance of it, running from one high rock to another, with ſquare towers at certain intervals, even at this diſtance, is moſt magnificent.

About noon, we quitted the plain, and entered an opening between two mountains. To the left, the mountains are very high. On the right, they decline as far as they are within view; but, I am told, they riſe again to a great height.

We deſcended by a narrow path about eight feet broad, between the mountains, till we came to a ſmall Chineſe monaſtery, ſituated on the declivity of a ſteep rock. Curioſity led us to viſit this ſolitary place: But the road being impaſſable to horſes, we alighted and walked thither. On our arriving near the place, the monks came

out

out to meet us, with the uſual friendly ſalutation of the country, which is performed by laying one of their hands on the other, and then ſhaking them, and pronouncing theſe words *Cho-loy-cho*. The compliment being returned, they conducted us into the apartments of their little chapel, and treated us with a diſh of green tea, which was very agreeable. In the chapel was a ſort of altar-piece, on which were placed ſeveral ſmall braſs images; and, in one of the corners, I obſerved a ſack filled with wheat. The habit of the monks was a long gown with wide ſleeves. On their heads was a ſmall cap, and their long lank hair hung down over their ſhoulders. They had very few hairs in their beards. This being the firſt Chineſe houſe we met with, I have on that account been more particular in deſcribing it. Every thing now appeared to us as if we had arrived in another world. We felt eſpecially a ſenſible alteration in the weather; for,

inſtead

inſtead of the cold bleak wind in the deſert, we had here a warm and pleaſant air.

We again proceeded along the narrow path, but of breadth ſufficient for a wheel-carriage. The road being ſteep, and in many places rugged, we walked down the hill, and in half an hour came to the foot of it, where we found ourſelves ſurrounded on all ſides by high rocky mountains. Our route now lay along the ſouth ſide of a rivulet, full of great ſtones, which had fallen from the rocks in rainy weather. In the cliffs of the rocks you ſee little ſcattered cottages, with ſpots of cultivated ground, much reſembling thoſe romantic figures of landſcapes which are painted on the China ware, and other manufactures of this country. Theſe are accounted fanciful by moſt Europeans, but are really natural.

After we had travelled about ſeven or eight miles, along the bank of the brook, we came in the evening to a Chineſe village, at the foot of a high mountain, where we lodged in clean rooms, with warm fires

of

of charcoal. There were no chimneys in the rooms; but, inſtead of theſe, the charcoal was put into a portable grate of braſs or iron, and allowed to burn clear in the open air; after which it was brought into the apartment. Though the deſert is one continued plain, it lies much higher than the plains and villages of China; for, when we entered the defile, the aſcent was very inconſiderable when compared with the deſcent on the other ſide.

Here we began to taſte of the fine fruits of China; for ſoon after our arrival in the village, our conductor ſent a preſent to the ambaſſador of ſome baſkets of fruits, conſiſting of water-melons, muſk-melons, ſweet and bitter oranges, peaches, apples, walnuts, cheſnuts, and ſeveral other ſorts which I never ſaw before, together with a jar of Chineſe arrack, proviſions of ſeveral ſorts, and ſome Chineſe bread, called bobon, made of wheaten flour, and baked over a pot with the ſteam of boiling-water. It is very light, and not diſagreeable in taſte; at leaſt

leaſt it ſeemed ſo to us, who had ſeen no bread for a month before.

Next day we halted to refreſh ourſelves after our long fatigue. I took this opportunity to walk up to the top of the mountain, in order to view the adjacent country, but could only ſee a continuation of the chain of mountains, riſing one above another, and to the northward ſome glimpſes of the long wall as it runs along them.

The 5th, we proceeded eaſtward down the ſouth bank of a river, whoſe channel was covered with great ſtones. The road is cut out of the rock for a conſiderable length at thoſe places where there is no natural paſſage between the rocks and the river, which muſt have been a work of great labour. This river cannot fail to be a complete torrent in time of great rains.

Having travelled about ſix or eight miles, we arrived at the famous wall of China. We entered at a great gate, which is ſhut every night, and always guarded by a thouſand

thouſand men, under the command of two officers of diſtinction, one a Chineſe, and the other a Mantzur Tartar; for it is an eſtabliſhed cuſtom in China, and has prevailed ever ſince the conqueſt of the Tartars, that in all places of public truſt there muſt be a Chineſe and a Tartar inveſted with equal power. This rule is obſerved both in civil and military affairs. The Chineſe pretend, that two in an office are a ſort of ſpies upon one another's actions, and thereby many fraudulent practices are either prevented or detected.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *From the Wall of China to Pekin; our Entry into that City.*

AS ſoon as we had entered the gate, theſe two officers, and many ſubalterns, came to compliment the ambaſſador on his ſafe arrival; and aſked the favour of him to walk into the guard-room and drink a diſh of tea. We accordingly diſmounted, and went into a ſpacious hall on the ſouth ſide of the gate. This apartment was very clean, having benches all around, and is kept on purpoſe for the reception of perſons of diſtinction. We were entertained

ed with variety of fruits and confections, and ſeveral ſorts of tea. After ſtaying about half an hour, the ambaſſador took leave of the gentlemen, and we proceeded on our journey. We travelled about four miles farther, and came to a conſiderable town named Kalgan. At ſome diſtance from the place we were met by the commandant, and the Mandarin Tuliſhin, who had paid us a viſit at Selinginſky. They accompanied the ambaſſador to his lodgings, which were in houſes apart from the reſt of the town; and proviſions were ſent us in great plenty.

From the wall to this place the country to the north begins to open, and contains ſome villages, corn-fields, and gardens.

The ſame evening, the ambaſſador and the gentlemen of the retinue were invited to ſup at the commandant's houſe, and horſes were ſent to carry us thither. We alighted in the outer-court, where the commandant in perſon waited for us, and conducted us through a neat inner-court

into a hall, in the middle of which ſtood a large braſs chaffing-diſh, in ſhape of an urn, with a fire of charcoal in it. The floor was covered with mats, and the room quite ſet round with chairs, and little ſquare japanned tables. The ambaſſador ſat at a table by himſelf, and the reſt of the company at ſeparate tables, by two and two. We were firſt entertained with tea, and a dram of hot arrack; after which ſupper was brought, and placed on the tables, without either table-cloth, napkins, knives, or forks. Inſtead of forks were laid down to every perſon a couple of ivory pins, with which the Chineſe take up their meat. The diſhes were ſmall, and placed upon the table in the moſt regular manner, the vacancies being filled with ſaucers, containing pickles and bitter herbs. The entertainment conſiſted of pork, mutton, fowls, and two roaſted pigs. The carver ſits upon the floor, and executes his office with great dexterity. He cuts the fleſh into ſuch ſmall bits, as may eaſily be taken up by the

gueſts,

gueſts, without further trouble. The meat being cut up is given to the footmen, who ſupply the empty diſhes on the tables. The whole is ſerved in China-ware, and neither gold nor ſilver is to be ſeen. All the ſervants perform their duty with the utmoſt regularity, and without the leaſt noiſe. I muſt confeſs, I was never better pleaſed with any entertainment.

The victuals being removed, the deſert was placed on the tables in the ſame order, and conſiſted of a variety of fruits and confections. In the mean time a band of muſic was called in, which conſiſted of ten or twelve performers, on various but chiefly wind-inſtruments, ſo different from thoſe of that claſs in Europe, that I ſhall not pretend to deſcribe them. The muſic was accompanied with dancing, which was very entertaining. The dancers were nearly as numerous as the muſicians. Their performances were only a kind of geſticulation, conſiſting of many ridiculous poſtures; for they ſeldom moved from the ſame

ſame place. The evening being pretty far ſpent, we took leave, and returned to our lodgings.

The 6th, a great fall of ſnow, and a cold froſty wind, obliged us to halt at this place.

Next day, the froſt and ſnow ſtill continued; notwithſtanding we ſet out, and paſſed over a ſtone-bridge near this place, paved, not with ſmall ſtones, but with large, ſquare, free ſtones, neatly joined. After travelling eaſtward about thirty Engliſh miles, we reached a large and populous city called Siang-fu. We were met without the gate by ſome of the principal inhabitants, and conducted to our lodgings.

When we arrived, the governour was out a-hunting with one of the Emperor's ſons. As ſoon as he returned in the evening, he waited on the ambaſſador, and complimented him in a very polite manner, excuſing himſelf for not waiting on him ſooner. At the ſame time, he gave his Excellency

lency a formal invitation to ſupper; for it is appointed by the court that foreign ambaſſadors ſhould be magnificently entertained in all the towns through which they paſs: But the ambaſſador, being ſomewhat indiſpoſed, deſired to be excuſed.

Our route this day was through a fine champaign country, well cultivated, but containing very few trees. We paſſed ſeveral ſmall towns, and many villages, well built, and incloſed with walls. The roads were well made, and in good order, running always in ſtraight lines where the ground will allow. I had heard a great deal of the order and oeconomy of theſe people, but found my information far ſhort of what I daily ſaw in all their works and actions. The ſtreets of every village run in ſtraight lines.

Upon the road we met with many turrets, called poſt-houſes, erected at certain diſtances from one another, with a flag-ſtaff, on which is hoiſted the imperial pendant. Theſe places are guarded by a few ſoldiers,

ſoldiers, who run a-foot from one poſt to another with great ſpeed, carrying letters or deſpatches that concern the Emperor. The turrets are ſo contrived as to be in ſight of one another; and, by ſignals, they can convey intelligence of any remarkable event. By this means the court is informed, in the ſpeedieſt manner imaginable, of whatever diſturbance may happen in the moſt remote provinces of the empire. Theſe poſts are alſo very uſeful, by keeping the country free from highwayman; for ſhould a perſon eſcape at one houſe, on a ſignal being made, he would certainly be ſtopped at the next. The diſtance of one poſt-houſe from another is uſually five Chineſe li or miles, each li conſiſting of five hundred bow lengths. I compute five of their miles to be about two and an half Engliſh.

The 8th, we halted at this place. As we could not be preſent at the entertainment to which we were invited laſt night by the governour, he had reſolved that the delicacies

delicacies prepared on that occaſion ſhould not be loſt, and therefore ſent into our court twelve tables, whereon were placed, by a number of people, all the victuals that were dreſſed the preceding night with the deſert, and ſeveral ſorts of tea. The whole was afterwards brought into the hall, and there placed in form upon the tables. When this was done, an officer of diſtinction came to deſire the ambaſſador to taſte of his Imperial Majeſty's bounty. We accordingly ſat down at the tables in great order. Every thing was very good, but moſtly cold, having been carried through the ſtreets to ſome diſtance. After we had removed from the table, the perſon who had the direction of the entertainment, called our ſervants, and ordered them to ſit down at the tables and eat. This produced a very diverting ſcene; but, had it not been complied with, the governour would have thought himſelf highly affronted.

In the evening, the Emperor's third ſon went through this city, on his way towards the

the capital. He was carried upon mens ſhoulders in a palankin, a vehicle very eaſy for the traveller, and well known in European ſettlements in India. The Emperor's ſons have no other names than thoſe of firſt, ſecond, third, &c. This prince had only a ſmall retinue of a few horſemen.

Our new conductor, Tulifhin, invited the ambaſſador and his retinue to paſs the evening at his lodgings. His Excellency excuſed himſelf, as he had not been at the governour's. All the gentlemen, however, accepted the invitation. The entertainment was elegant, and ſomething like that I formerly deſcribed, accompanied with dancing and muſic, and quail-fighting. It is ſurpriſing to ſee how theſe little birds fly at one another as ſoon as they are ſet upon the table and fight, like game-cocks, to death. The Chineſe are very fond of this diverſion, and bet as high on their quails as the Engliſh do on cocks. They are alſo great lovers of cock-fighting; but it is reckoned among the vulgar ſports. The quails

quails are generally parted before they hurt one another too much, and reſerved in cages till another occaſion.

The 9th, having ſent off the baggage in the morning, the ambaſſador returned the governour's viſit. We only ſtaid to drink tea; after which we immediately mounted, and purſued our journey to a ſmall town called Juny, where we arrived in the evening. Near this place is a ſteep rock, ſtanding on a plain, inacceſſible on all ſides, except to the weſt, where a narrow winding path is cut in the rock, which leads to a Pagan temple and nunnery built upon the top of it. Theſe edifices make a pretty appearance from the plain; and, as the ſtory goes, were built from the foundation in one night by a lady, on the following occaſion. This lady was very beautiful, virtuous, and rich, and had many powerful princes for her ſuitors. She told them, ſhe intended to build a temple and a monaſtery of certain dimenſions, with her own hands, in one night, on the top of this

rock; and whoever would undertake to build a ſtone-bridge over a river in the neighbourhood, in the ſame ſpace of time, him ſhe promiſed to accept for a huſband. All the lovers having heard the difficult taſk impoſed on them, returned to their reſpective dominions, except one ſtranger, who undertook to perform the hard condition. The lover and the lady began their labour at the ſame time, and the lady completed her part before the light appeared; but as ſoon as the ſun was riſen, ſhe ſaw from the top of the rock, that her lover had not half-finiſhed his bridge, having raiſed only the pillars for the arches. Failing, therefore, in his part of the performance, he alſo was obliged to depart to his own country; and the lady paſſed the remainder of her days in her own monaſtery.

The river is about a quarter of a mile from the rock, and the pillars ſtill remain about five or ſix feet above the water; they are ſix or eight in number, and good

ſubſtantial

ſubſtantial work. This tale I relate as a ſpecimen of many fabulous ſtories, which I heard every day, and the people firmly believe. In the monaſtery there are at preſent many monks and nuns.

The chain of mountains running to the north, which bound this plain to the weſt, are very high, rugged, and barren. Their breadth from the deſert to the plain habitable country of China, I compute not to exceed fifteen or twenty miles, and in many places it is much leſs. But their length, I am informed, is above one thouſand Engliſh miles. They encompaſs all, or the greateſt part of the empire of China, to the north and weſt. Theſe impregnable bulwarks, together with the almoſt impaſſable deſerts, have, in my opinion, ſo long preſerved this nation from being over-run by the weſtern heroes. One would imagine, that a country, ſo fortified by nature, had little need of ſuch a ſtrong wall for its defence; for, if all the paſſes of the mountains are as narrow and difficult as that where

where we entered, a ſmall number of men might defend it againſt a mighty army.

Juny is but a ſmall place; it ſuffered greatly by the earthquake that happened in the month of July the preceding year, above one half of it being thereby laid in ruins. Indeed, more than one-half of the towns and villages through which we travelled this day had ſuffered much on the ſame occaſion, and vaſt numbers of people had been buried in the ruins. I muſt confeſs, it was a diſmal ſcene to ſee every where ſuch heaps of rubbiſh.

All the beſt houſes being thrown down by the earthquake, we were lodged in the prieſts apartments of a temple, which had eſcaped the general devaſtation. Our conductor treated the monks with very little ceremony, and deſired them to ſeek other lodgings for themſelves. Theſe prieſts were not at all ſuperſtitious, as appeared ſufficiently from the little reverence they paid to their idols, and ſtatues of reputed ſaints. They conducted us into the temple,

temple, and ſeveral apartments adjoining, where ſtood many images of ſaints, ſome of which were monſtrous figures of ſtone and plaiſter. One of the prieſts gave us the hiſtory of ſome of them, which I thought too abſurd to be inſerted. We then returned into the temple, which was a ſmall but neat building. In one end of it we ſaw an altar, riſing by ſteps to the cieling, on which were placed a number of ſmall images, caſt chiefly in braſs, reſembling men and women, birds and beaſts. We were entertained in the temple with tea till the prieſts had removed their beds. At the entrance is hung a large bell, attended by a prieſt, who tolls it on ſeeing paſſengers, in order to invite them to ſay their prayers; which having done, they generally leave a ſmall gratuity to the temple.

In the night, we were a little alarmed with the ſhock of an earthquake, which awakened all our people, but did no damage.

Next

Next day, our conductor notified to the ambaſſador, that he could proceed no farther till he received an anſwer to ſome deſpatches he had ſent to court. Theſe news were not altogether agreeable, as we apprehended another ſhock of an earthquake. Nothing, however, of that kind happened during the two days we were obliged to remain at this place.

The 12th, we continued our journey to a little town, where we lodged. This, and moſt of the towns and villages through which we paſſed to day, had ſuffered greatly by the earthquake; particularly one conſiderable walled town, where very few houſes remained, and the walls were levelled with the ground.

About noon, next day, we came to a large, populous, and well built city, with broad ſtreets, as ſtraight as a line. Near this place runs a fine river, which appears navigable, having acroſs it a noble ſtone bridge, of ſeveral arches, and paved with large ſquare ſtones. In the evening, we arrived

arrived at a ſmall town, after paſſing through a very pleaſant and fruitful country.

On the 14th, we halted at this little town: But our baggage, and his Majeſty's preſents, advanced a ſtage farther. Theſe, by order of the Mandarin, our conductor, were carried on men's ſhoulders, covered with pieces of yellow ſilk, as every thing is which hath any connection with the court. Whatever is diſtinguiſhed by this badge is looked on as ſacred; and he who has the care of any thing belonging to the Emperor needs no other protection; ſuch is the reverence paid him all over the empire. The yellow colour is choſen by the Emperor, becauſe, among the Chineſe, it is the emblem of the ſun, to which he is compared.

The following day, our road, lying over ſome rocks, was very rugged. In ſome places it was cut, for a conſiderable length, above twenty feet deep, through the ſolid rock, which appears to have been a work of

of great labour and expence. But no people I ever ſaw take ſuch pains to make their ſtreets and high-ways eaſy to travellers as the Chineſe. In ſome places of the rocks were cut out images of Chineſe ſaints; but the workmanſhip very mean.

Near this place, we paſſed through ſix or eight ſtrong ſemicircular walls within one another, which have the endleſs wall for their common diameter, and take in a great compaſs. In all theſe walls there are large well built gates, guarded by a conſtant watch, both in times of peace and war. At one of them, the ambaſſador was ſaluted with three great guns, from a tower over the gate-way. Theſe walls ſeem to be of the ſame materials and architecture with the long wall, having ſquare towers at the diſtance of a bow-ſhot from each other. While we ſtopped at one of the gates to refreſh ourſelves, I took the opportunity to walk into one of theſe towers, where I ſaw ſome hundreds of old iron cannon thrown together as uſeleſs. On examination

examination I found them to be compoſed of three or four pieces of hammered iron, joined, and faſtened together with hoops of the ſame metal. The Chineſe have, however, now learned to caſt as fine braſs cannon as are any where to be found. From this tower I was led, by a broad ſtone ſtair, to the top of the wall, which is above twenty feet in breadth, and paved with large ſquare ſtones, cloſely joined, and cemented with ſtrong mortar. I walked along this flat, till I came to a rock, where I found a high ſtair of above a thouſand ſteps, the whole breadth of the wall, which led to a tower on the ſummit, from whence I could ſee like a ſtair, on the other ſide, forming a deſcent to a narrow paſſage between two rocks. I obſerved alſo, that the wall was neither ſo high nor broad where it was carried over another rock to the ſouth-weſt, as at the place where I ſtood. But time not allowing me to go farther, I returned by the ſame way to our company; and, after ſtaying a few hours,

we proceeded this afternoon to the town of Zulinguang, where we lodged.

The next day, after travelling about two hours, we came to the laſt ſemicircular wall. Here ended all the hills and mountains. Our road now lay through a fine champaign country, interſperſed with many ſmall towns and villages. In the evening, we reached a large neat city, called Zang-ping-jew. In the market place ſtood a triumphal arch, whereon were hung a number of ſtreamers, and ſilken pendants, of various colours. The ſtreets were clean, ſtraight, and broad; in ſome places covered with gravel, in others paved with flat ſquare ſtones.

As ſoon as we reached our lodgings, the governour of the place came to ſalute the ambaſſador, and invited him to an entertainment, prepared by order of his Majeſty.

The invitation was accepted, and we immediately went to the governour's palace. The entertainment was very magnificent, ſome-

ſomewhat of the ſame kind with that I formerly deſcribed, and accompanied with muſic and dancing. This place is ſituated in a fruitful plain, about thirty Engliſh miles northward of Pekin.

The 17th, after travelling about a dozen of miles, we came to a ſmall town called Shach. The weather being very fine and warm, the governour came to meet the ambaſſador, and deſired him to refreſh himſelf a little, by drinking tea. Here we halted about an hour, and then proceeded ſix or eight miles farther, to a ſmall village, about four miles from the capital, where we lodged.

Next morning, two mandarins came from court, to congratulate the ambaſſador on his arrival, and brought ſome horſes, on which he and his retinue were to make their entry. The furniture of the horſes was very ſimple, and far inferior to the coſtly trappings of the Perſians.

My lodgings in this village happened to be at a cook's houſe, which gave me an oppor-

opportunity of obſerving the ingenuity of theſe people, even on trifling occaſions. My landlord being in his ſhop, I paid him a viſit, where I found ſix kettles, placed in a row on furnaces, having a ſeparate opening under each of them, for receiving the fewel, which conſiſted of a few ſmall ſticks and ſtraw. On his pulling a thong, he blew a pair of bellows, which made all his kettles boil in a very ſhort time. They are indeed very thin, and made of caſt iron, being extremely ſmooth, both within and without. The ſcarcity of fewel, near ſuch a populous city, prompts people to contrive the eaſieſt methods of dreſſing their victuals, and keeping themſelves warm during the winter, which is ſevere for two months.

About ten of the clock, we mounted, and proceeded towards the city, in the following order:

An

An officer, with his ſword drawn.
Three ſoldiers.
One kettle-drummer.
Twenty-four ſoldiers, three in rank.
The ſteward.
Twelve footmen.
Two pages.
Three interpreters.
The ambaſſador, and a mandarin of diſtinction.
Two ſecretaries.
Six gentlemen, two and two.
Servants and attendants.

The whole retinue was dreſſed in their beſt apparel. The ſoldiers in uniform, carrying their muſkets like horſemen ſtanding centry; drawn ſwords being refuſed by our conductor, the officer only had that privilege.

We travelled from the village, along a fine road, through a cloud of duſt, and multitudes of ſpectators; and, in two hours, entered the city at the great north gate;

gate; which opened into a ſpacious ſtreet, perfectly ſtraight, as far as the eye-ſight could reach. We found it all ſprinkled with water, which was very refreſhing, after the duſt we had paſſed through.

A guard of five hundred Chineſe horſemen was appointed to clear the way; notwithſtanding which, we found it very difficult to get through the crowd. One would have imagined all the people in Pekin were aſſembled to ſee us; though I was informed that only a ſmall part of the inhabitants of the city were preſent. I obſerved alſo great crowds of women unveiled; but they kept in the windows, doors, and in corners of the ſtreet. The ſoldiers did not behave with roughneſs to the people, as in ſome other places of the eaſt, but treated them with great mildneſs and humanity. Indeed the people, of themſelves, made as much way as was poſſible for them, conſidering their numbers. After a march of two hours, from the gate where we entered, we at laſt came to our lodgings,

in

in that part of the city called the Tartar's town, which is near the center of Pekin, and not far from the Emperor's palace.

We lodged in what is called the Ruſſia-houſe. It was allotted, by the preſent Emperor, for the accommodation of the caravans from Moſcovy, and is ſurrounded with a high wall of brick, which incloſes three courts. The firſt from the ſtreet is appointed for the guard of Chineſe ſoldiers. The ſecond is a ſpacious ſquare, on the ſides whereof are apartments for ſervants. The third is divided from the ſecond by a high brick-wall, thro' which you enter by a great gate. Oppoſite to this gate is the great hall, which riſes a few ſteps above the level of the court. The floor is neatly paved with white and black marble; and, on the ſame floor, to the right and left of the hall, are two ſmall bed-chambers. This hall was occupied by the ambaſſador. In the ſame court are two large houſes, divided into apartments, in which the retinue was lodged. All theſe ſtructures are but of one

one ſtorey, with large windows of lettice-work, on which is paſted white paper. The cielings are very ſlight and airy, conſiſting only of ſtrong laths, with reeds laid acroſs them, and done over on the inſide with paper. The roofs project conſiderably over the walls, and are covered with fine light glazed tiles, which, as far as I could learn, are of a quality to laſt ages. The bed-chambers only of the hall are neatly finiſhed with lath and plaiſter.

The ſame evening, the maſter of the ceremonies came to compliment the ambaſſador. He, in the Emperor's name, inquired into the chief ſubject of his commiſſion; and, having received a ſatisfactory anſwer, retired.

This gentleman, named Aloy, was by birth a Mongall Tartar, and a great favourite of the Emperor. He was a perſon of great politeneſs, and a good friend to the Chriſtians, eſpecially the miſſionaries, who received freſh marks of his kindneſs every day. In his youth he converſed much with the

the Jeſuits, who taught him geography, and ſome other branches of ſcience; which contributed not a little to raiſe his character among the Chineſe, and recommend him to the notice and favour of the Emperor.

Thus, we happily arrived at the famous and long wiſhed for city of Pekin, the capital of this mighty empire, after a tedious journey of exactly ſixteen months. It is indeed very long, yet may be performed in much leſs time. I am of opinion that travellers might go from St Peterſburgh to Pekin, and return, in the ſpace of ſix months, which, were it neceſſary, I think I could eaſily demonſtrate.

After the departure of the maſter of the ceremonies, the aleggada, or prime miniſter, ſent an officer to ſalute the ambaſſador, and excuſe himſelf for not paying him a viſit immediately, as it was then late in the night, but promiſed to ſee him next day. At the ſame time, he ſent great variety of fruits and proviſions, as a mark of reſpect,

notwithſtanding we were abundantly ſupplied with theſe things by thoſe appointed for that purpoſe.

At ten of the clock at night, the officer on guard in the outer-court locked our gate, and ſealed it with the Emperor's ſeal, that no perſon might go out or come in during the night. The ambaſſador, not approving of this proceeding, as ſoon as the gate was opened in the morning, ſent his ſecretary, and an interpreter, to the prime miniſter, to complain of his being confined. The aleggada ſaid he was altogether ignorant of what had happened, but expreſsly forbid any ſuch behaviour for the future. In Perſia, indeed, and ſome other nations of the eaſt, it is the cuſtom to reſtrain foreign miniſters from converſing with the inhabitants, till they have had an audience of the Prince.

END OF VOLUME FIRST.